

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 705N handset.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using the SoftBank 705N handset to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it for later reference.
- Accessible services may be limited to contract conditions or service area.

The SoftBank 705N handset is compatible with the 3G and GSM network systems.

Note

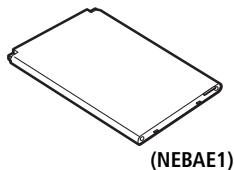
- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- The guide contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, please contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with the handset: Some accessories are also available for purchase.

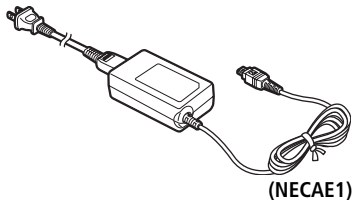
For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

■ **Battery pack**



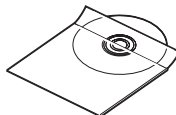
(NEBAE1)

■ **AC Charger**



(NECAE1)

■ **Utilities CD-ROM
(Japanese)^{*1*2}**



■ **Charger Adapter^{*3}**

(NEDAE1)

■ **Headset Adapter^{*3}**

(NEDAE2)

The handset supports microSD memory card (not included). Purchase microSD memory card(s) to use memory card functions.

*1 Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

*2 Upgrades or updates of included utility software may become available on the SoftBank Website (www.softbank.jp) without prior notification.
Please check for the newest versions of utility applications and download as required.

*3 Use Adapters to connect other optional items.

Contents

Accessories	i
Contents	ii
Guide to This Manual	xiii
Safety Precautions	xvi
General Notesxxvi

1 Getting Started

Main Features	1-2
USIM Card	1-4
USIM Basics	1-4
General Notes Regarding the USIM Card	1-4
Inserting/Removing the USIM Card	1-5
USIM PINs	1-6
Handset Parts & Functions	1-8
Handset	1-8
Display Indicators	1-11
External Display Indicators	1-12
Battery & Charger	1-13
Notes on Using Battery & Charger	1-13
Inserting/Removing the Battery	1-16
Charging the Battery	1-18
Charging with the In-Car Charger	1-19
Turning the Handset On/Off	1-21

Turning the Handset On	1-21
Turning the Handset Off	1-21
Initial Settings	1-21
Setting Date & Time	1-21
Retrieving Network Information	1-23
Changing the Language Mode	1-23
Changing the Display Language to English	1-23
Changing the Display Language to Japanese	1-23
Keys & Menus	1-24
Softkeys	1-24
Main Menu	1-24
Selecting Multiple Items	1-26
My Menu	1-26
OPTIONS	1-27
Multitasking	1-28
Launching New Tasks	1-28
Switching Tasks	1-28
Ending Tasks	1-28
Handset Codes	1-29
Security Code	1-29
Center Access Code	1-29
Network Password	1-29

2 Basic Handset Operations

Making a Call	2-2
Dialing from Call Logs	2-3
Dialed Calls	2-3
Received Calls	2-4
Checking Missed Calls or New Messages	2-6
Answering a Call	2-6
When You Cannot Answer an Incoming Call	2-7
Putting an Incoming Call on Hold (Hold Answer)	2-7
Recording a Message (Answer Phone)	2-7
Rejecting an Incoming Call	2-8
Preventing Prank Calls	2-8
Operations During a Call	2-8
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	2-8
Putting a Call on Hold	2-9
Recording a Call (Call Memo)	2-9
Switching to Handsfree	2-9
Checking Call Time/Costs	2-10
Displaying Call Time & Costs	2-10
Checking Total/Previous Call Time & Cost	2-10
Setting a Limit of Call Costs	2-11
Resetting Total Call Time or Cost	2-12
Checking Owner Information	2-12
Checking Your Own Phone Number & Mail Address	2-12
Calling from Outside Japan (Roaming)	2-13

Switching the Network Mode	2-13
Making an International Call Outside Japan	2-13
Setting Mobile Phone Provider	2-14
Setting Preferred Provider	2-14
Minding Mobile Manners	2-16
Setting/Canceling Manner Mode	2-16
Making an Emergency Call	2-17
Dialing Restrictions & Emergency Calls	2-17

3 Entering Characters

Entering Characters	3-2
Text Entry Window	3-2
Text Entry Modes	3-3
Key Assignments	3-5
Entering Characters in Mode1	3-6
Entering Kanji/Hiragana	3-6
Entering Single-byte/Double-byte Alphanumeric Characters or Date/ Time in Kanji/Hiragana Entry Mode	3-8
Entering Katakana	3-9
Entering Alphanumerics	3-9
Entering Numbers	3-10
Entering Symbols/Pictographs	3-10
Entering Emoticons	3-11
Breaking a Line	3-11
Using Kuten Codes	3-11
Converting Easily (Personal Dictionary)	3-11

Quoting Phone Book Data	3-12
Quoting Owner Information	3-13
Changing Input Mode	3-13
Entering Characters in T9	3-13
Entering Characters in 2-touch	3-17
Editing Characters.	3-18
Editing Characters	3-18
Deleting Characters	3-19
Copying/Cutting/Pasting	3-19
Moving the Cursor to the Beginning/End of the Text	3-20

4 Phone Book

Saving Entries to Phone Book.	4-2
Phone Book Entry Items	4-2
Creating New Entries	4-3
Saving a Number from Call Logs	4-5
Checking Phone Book Memory	4-5
Setting Groups	4-5
Using Phone Book.	4-6
Making a Call Using an Entry	4-6
Exchanging Data between Handset & USIM Card	4-9
Editing Entries.	4-10
Editing Entries	4-10
Deleting Entries	4-10

5 Video Call

Before Using Video Calls	5-2
Video Call Window	5-2
Making a Video Call.	5-2
Answering a Video Call	5-3
Operations During a Video Call	5-3
Video Call Settings.	5-4
Setting the Quality of Image.	5-4
Setting the Image to Show When Dialing	5-5
Selecting an Alternative Image.	5-5
Setting What to Do If a Video Call Is Not Connected	5-5
Setting Screen Mode During a Video Call	5-5
Setting Night Mode	5-6

6 Camera

Before Using the Camera.	6-2
Notes on Capturing Images	6-2
General Notes on Camera	6-2
Display	6-3
Macro Switch	6-4
Capturing Images.	6-4
Photo Camera Mode	6-4
Capturing Images	6-4
Viewing Images	6-6

Capturing Videos	6-6
Video Camera Mode	6-6
Capturing Videos	6-6
Playing Videos	6-8
Sending Images or Videos	6-8
Bar Code Reader	6-8

7 Display & Lighting

Display	7-2
Setting a Calendar or Image on the Display	7-2
Hiding Information on the External Display	7-3
Selecting the External Display Clock Style	7-3
Hiding Notification on the External Display	7-3
Display Light	7-4
Customizing the Display Light Settings	7-4
Setting the Display Power Saving Function	7-4
Using Desktop Icons	7-5
Adding Desktop Icons	7-5
Accessing a Function or Data from a Desktop Icon	7-6
Checking Desktop Icon Properties	7-6
Changing Desktop Icon Designs	7-6
Setting a Captured Image as Desktop Icon	7-6
Moving Desktop Icons	7-6
Deleting Desktop Icons	7-7
Changing Main Menu	7-7

Changing Menu Image	7-7
Changing Main Menu Icon	7-7

Changing Font Type	7-8
Large Font	7-8
Illumination	7-8

8 Sounds

Mode	8-2
Sound Settings	8-3
Ringtone	8-3
Alarm Volume	8-4
Vibrator	8-5
Other Settings	8-5

9 Entertainment

Music Player	9-2
Music Player	9-2
Playback	9-4
Creating a Playlist	9-6
Editing a Playlist	9-6
Downloading Music	9-7
Media Player	9-7
Media Player	9-7
Viewing Pictures	9-8

Picture Playback Display	9-8
Editing Pictures	9-9
Playing Videos	9-11
Video Player Display	9-11
Creating a Playlist	9-12
Adding Files to a Playlist	9-13
Setting Media Player	9-14
S! Cast	9-14
S! Cast	9-14
Subscribing/Unsubscribing	9-15
Viewing Information Updates	9-15
Checking Past Content	9-15
Setting Weather Icon	9-16
Displaying Weather Information	9-16
Displaying Weather Icon	9-16
Manually Updating Weather Icon	9-17
Displaying Information on Weather Icon	9-17
S! Loop	9-18
Selecting Service	9-18

10 Data Management

Data Folder	10-2
Data Folder Tree	10-2
Viewing Stored Files	10-3
Opening Files	10-3

Using vfiles	10-5
vfiles	10-5
Creating (Saving) vfiles	10-5
Acquiring vfiles for Each Feature	10-6
Managing Folders	10-6
Creating Folders	10-6
Renaming Folders	10-6
Deleting Folders	10-7
Managing Files	10-7
Renaming Files	10-7
Copying/Moving Files	10-7
Deleting Files	10-8
Before Using the Memory Card	10-8
Using the microSD Memory Card	10-8
Installing/Removing the microSD Memory Card	10-9
Using the Memory Card	10-11
Formatting (Initializing) the microSD Memory Card	10-11
Checking Data on the microSD Memory Card	10-11
Transferring Data	10-12

11 External Connection

Bluetooth	11-2
Bluetooth	11-2
Activating Bluetooth	11-3
Pairing	11-3

Using Bluetooth to Transfer Data	11-4
Using Bluetooth to Connect a Device	11-5
Using Bluetooth for Dial-up Connection	11-5
Connecting to a PC	11-6
Bundled Utilities CD-ROM	11-6
Data Communication	11-7
Transferring Data	11-8
Reading/Writing Files on the microSD Memory Card	11-8

12 Handset Security

Changing Security Code	12-2
Setting PIN Code	12-2
Changing PIN Code	12-2
Enabling PIN1 Authentication	12-2
Canceling PIN Lock	12-3
Preventing Unauthorized Handset Use	12-4
Setting Locks	12-4
Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls	12-5
Restricting Outgoing Calls (Fixed Dialing)	12-5
Rejecting Calls from Unknown Phone Numbers (Unknown)	12-6
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID (Ignore If No ID)	12-6
Saving Secret Entries/Events	12-6
Saving Secret Entries/Events	12-6
Displaying/Hiding Secret Data	12-7
Locking Keys	12-8

Resetting the Handset	12-9
Resetting Functions (Settings Reset)	12-9
Deleting Personal Data (Memory Reset)	12-9
Resetting/Deleting All Functions & Personal Data (All Reset)	12-9

13 Organiser & Tools

Scheduling (Calendar)	13-2
Viewing the Calendar	13-2
Changing the Format	13-2
Adding Schedules/Events	13-3
Setting Holidays	13-4
Checking Appointments, Holidays & Events	13-4
Editing Appointments, Holidays & Events	13-4
Deleting Appointments, Holidays & Events	13-5
Using the Alarms	13-5
Setting Alarms	13-5
Changing/Canceling Alarm Settings	13-6
Deleting Alarms	13-7
Using Tasks	13-7
Creating Tasks	13-7
Checking Tasks	13-8
Editing Tasks	13-8
Deleting Tasks	13-9
Using the Calculator/Converter	13-9
Using the Calculator	13-9
Using the Converter	13-10

Taking Notes (Notepad)	13-11
Adding Notes	13-11
Checking/Using the Notes	13-11
Deleting the Notes	13-12
Using Answer Phone	13-12
Setting Answer Phone	13-12
Playing Answer Phone	13-13
Deleting Answer Phone	13-14
Recording Your Voice (Voice Recorder)	13-14
Recording Your Voice	13-14
Playing the Records	13-15
Deleting Voice Memo	13-16

14 Advanced Settings

Advanced Operations During a Call	14-2
Sending Push Tones (Dial Pause)	14-2
Setting a Call Handling Operation When the Handset is Closed (Close Setting)	14-2
Using a Stereo Microphone	14-3
Using the Speaker	14-3
Making Calls with a Single Operation	14-3
Receiving Calls with a Single Operation	14-3
Receiving Calls Automatically (Auto Answer)	14-4
Sending Push Tones	14-5
Setting the International Access Code	14-5

Adding the International Access Code	14-5
Editing the International Access Code	14-5
Deleting the International Access Code	14-5

15 Optional Services

Optional Services Overview	15-2
Using Optional Services	15-2
Using the Menus	15-2
Using Service Codes	15-2
Setting Services from a Landline	15-3
Call Forwarding	15-3
Activating Call Forwarding	15-3
Deactivating Call Forwarding	15-4
Checking Settings Automatically	15-5
Voice Mail	15-5
Playing Voice Mail Messages	15-5
Changing Voice Mail Service Center Number	15-6
Activating/Deactivating Missed Call Notification	15-6
Call Waiting	15-6
Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting	15-7
Answering Another Call During a Call	15-7
Group Talk	15-7
Launching a Group Talk	15-7
Call Barring	15-9
Blocking Incoming/Outgoing Calls	15-9

Canceling All Restrictions	15-9
Changing Network Password	15-10
Caller ID	15-10
Send Caller ID	15-10
Block Caller ID	15-10
Network Default	15-10
Manually Send Caller ID	15-11
Manually Block Caller ID	15-11
Display Caller ID	15-11
Confirm Subscription Status	15-11

16 Messaging

Messaging	16-2
Customizing Handset Address	16-2
Checking a New Message	16-3
Checking Messages on the External Display	16-3
Retrieving S! Mail	16-3
Using the Received Message	16-4
Creating a Message	16-4
Selecting Message Type	16-5
Entering Address	16-6
Entering Subject	16-6
Entering Text	16-7
Sending	16-7
File Attachment	16-7

Files from Data Folder	16-7
Creating Slides	16-8
Adding Slides	16-8
Slide Interval	16-9
Send Option	16-10
Drafts	16-10
Checking Messages	16-11
Checking Message List	16-11
Operations on the Message Window	16-12
Folder Management	16-14
Changing Folder Names	16-14
Selecting Multiple Messages	16-14
Move Messages to Other Folders	16-15
Automatic Sorting to a Specified Folder	16-15
Reply Message	16-16
Forwarding Message	16-17
Message from Outbox	16-17
Message Protection	16-18
Message Deletion	16-18
Delete a Specified Message	16-18
Delete All the Messages under Message Box or Folder	16-18
Using Phone Number, Email Address & URL	16-19
Phone Book Entry	16-19
Phone to, Message to, & Internet Access	16-19
Using Attachments	16-20

Check Attachments	16-20
Save in Data Folder	16-20
Operation from Message List Window	16-21
Sort Messages	16-21
Checking Delivery Reports	16-21
Using Message List	16-23
Message List Retrieval	16-23
Receiving S! Mail from Message List	16-24
Deleting S! Mail on the Server Using Message List	16-24
Forwarding Messages on the Server	16-25
Common Settings to S! Mail/SMS.	16-25
Scroll	16-25
Heading Text/Signature	16-25
Font Size	16-26
S! Mail Settings.	16-26
Auto Receive	16-26
Automatic Play	16-26
Creation Mode.	16-27
Delivery Report	16-27
Send Reports	16-27
Validity Period	16-28
Delivery Time	16-28
SMS Settings.	16-29
SMS Report Request	16-29
Validity Period	16-29
SMS Center	16-29

3D Pictogram Settings.	16-30
Reset Settings	16-30
Settings Reset	16-30

17 Web

Web	17-2
Before Using the Web	17-2
Accessing the Web.	17-3
Yahoo! Keitai Menu.	17-3
Accessing Mobile Internet Sites	17-3
Entering a URL	17-3
Navigating a Web Page	17-4
Using Links from Web Pages	17-6
Using Pictures	17-6
Saving Files to Data Folder.	17-6
Using Melodies	17-7
Playing Melodies	17-7
Saving Melodies to Data Folder	17-7
Using Other Files	17-7
Using Data with Content Key	17-7
Using Streaming	17-8
Saved Pages/Bookmarks	17-8
Saved Pages	17-8
Bookmarks	17-9
History	17-11

Other Settings	17-11
Changing Character Code	17-11
Changing Font Size	17-11
Changing Scroll Settings	17-12
Updating a Page	17-12
Searching for a Word on a Page	17-12
Copying Text on a Page	17-12
Viewing Page Information	17-12
Creating a Message with a URL or Picture	17-13
Checking Server Certificate	17-13
Image Display/Sound Playback Settings	17-13
Security Settings	17-14
Setting Cookies	17-14
Manufacture Number Notification	17-15
Checking Root Certificates	17-15
Setting Location Information from a Website	17-15
Setting LBS Lock	17-15
Setting Whether to Send Location Information	17-16
Resetting Browser Settings	17-16
Resetting Settings to Default	17-16
Clearing the Access History	17-16
Clearing the Cache	17-17

18 S! Appli

S! Appli	18-2
---------------------------	-------------

Downloading S! Appli	18-2
Launching S! Appli	18-3
Ending/Pausing/Resuming S! Appli	18-4
Ending/Pausing S! Appli	18-4
Resuming Paused S! Appli	18-4
Managing S! Appli	18-5
Moving S! Appli	18-5
Deleting S! Appli	18-5
Setting Security Levels	18-5
Resetting Security Levels	18-6
S! Appli Settings	18-6
Incoming Settings	18-6
Adjusting Volume	18-7
Setting Vibration	18-7
Backlight Settings	18-7
Resetting S! Appli Settings	18-8
Resetting S! Appli Settings to Default	18-8
Deleting All S! Appli	18-8

19 Appendix

Features	19-2
Settings to Be Reset	19-8
Multitasking Combination	19-14
Software Update	19-15
Software Update	19-15

Check the Result of the Software Update	19-16
Troubleshooting	19-17
Kuten Codes	19-21
Symbols/Pictographs.	19-27
Symbols.	19-27
Pictographs	19-27
Emoticons	19-30
Memory Capacity	19-32
Specifications	19-32
INDEX	19-34
Warranty & After Sales Service.	19-42
Customer Service	19-43

Guide to This Manual

In this manual, "handset" refers to SoftBank 705N.

■ Procedures

Procedures are described using simplified notations in this manual. For understanding the notations, see "Keys & Menus" in "Getting Started" (👉 p.1-24).

■ Display Images

- Window illustrations in this manual are provided as examples. Items or numbers in the illustrations may differ from those actually appearing on your handset display.
- Some illustrations may be enlarged for easier viewing.

■ Window Messages

- This manual describes instructions using default settings. If settings are changed, Display images or handset actions may differ from those in this manual. When a message appears on Display, read it carefully. Example: If call restriction settings have been changed and you attempt to make a call, a warning indicating that the call cannot be made appears.

■ Intellectual Property Right

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865
5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420
5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338

- T9® Text Input and the T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications in the United States and/or other countries. T9 Text Input has applied for or obtained global patents.



- microSD™ is a trademark of the SD Association.
- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is licensed in accordance with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. Personal and noncommercial use is only permitted when:



- Capturing a video that complies with the MPEG-4 Visual standards (MPEG-4 Video)
- Playing a MPEG-4 Video captured by a consumer who engages in personal and nonprofit activities

· Playing MPEG-4 Video provided by a party licensed by MPEG-LA

Contact MPEG LA, LLC, a company in the United States, when using this product for promotion, in-house use, for-profit or other purposes.

- QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Incorporated.
- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems. Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Java and Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- 着うた® and 着うたフル® are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
- This product incorporates NetFront Browser and NetFront Messaging Client of ACCESS CO., LTD. as Internet browser and mailer. Copyright© 2004-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- ACCESS and NetFront are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by NEC is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.



- Windows 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional.
- Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition.
- Windows® 2000 Professional is referred to as Windows 2000 in this manual.
- Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition are referred to as Windows XP in this manual.
- Video Call, S! Appli, 3D Pictogram, S! Loop, S! Cast and Weather Icon are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese and the SOFTBANK logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK Corp. in Japan and other countries.
- Logos of "Yahoo!", "Yahoo!" and "Y!" are registered trademarks or trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.
- "マルチタスク®/MULTITASK®", "ワード予測®" and "NEC SUPER TOWN®" are registered trademarks or trademarks of NEC Corporation.
- Powered by mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® are registered trademarks or trademarks of HI CORPORATION.
- All other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

In the frequency bandwidth of the Bluetooth® function of this equipment, industrial device, scientific device, medical device like microwave ovens, licensed premises radio station and non-licensed specified low-power radio station for mobile object identification system (RF-ID) that is used in product line of factories, and amateur radio station (referred to as Other Radio Stations hereinafter) are used.

1. Please make sure before using the Bluetooth® function that no Other Radio Stations are used in the neighborhood.
2. In case that RF interference occurs to Other Radio Stations from this equipment, please change promptly the place to use, or stop using the Bluetooth® function (emitting radio).
3. Please contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43) if you have a problem, such as interference from this equipment to Other Radio Stations.

The Bluetooth® function of this equipment uses the frequency bandwidth of 2.4GHz and FH-SS modulation. The interference range of this equipment is less than 10m.

2.4FH1
■■■■■■■■■■

Safety Precautions

- To ensure safe use of the handset, please read these safety precautions carefully before use and retain for future reference.
- The following precautions are provided for your benefit to protect you and others and to avoid damage to property. Please observe these Safety Precautions.

SoftBank shall not be liable for any damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of improper use of this product, failure during use, memory loss or any other nonconformity.

Symbols

This manual uses various symbols to facilitate understanding of the contents, ensure correct use to prevent injury to yourself and others and prevent damage to property. The symbols used and their meanings are described below. Read the remainder of this manual only after thoroughly familiarizing yourself with these symbols and their meanings.



Danger

Improper handling poses a great risk of death or serious injury.



Warning

Improper handling poses a potential risk of death or serious injury.



Caution

Improper handling poses a risk of injury or damage to the product or other property.

Symbols



The action is prohibited.



The action is compulsory.



The power cord must be unplugged.



Danger

■ Handset, Battery & Charging Device

Use only approved battery and charging device

(👉 p.i). Using unauthorized devices may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not get the handset, battery and charging device

wet. Exposure of these devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc.



Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the handset, battery and charging device, and do not

solder them. Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock. Also, doing so may cause the battery to leak, overheat, explode or ignite. For repair and maintenance, contact Customer Service (👉 p.19-43).



Do not use or leave the handset, battery and charging device in places subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near a heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause those devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause the part of the handset body to become hot and possibly cause burns.



■ Battery

To prevent battery leakage, overheating, bursting or ignition, do not:



- Use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. (Insert the battery in the correct direction and orientation.)
- Dispose of the battery in fire.
- Short-circuit the positive and negative poles of the battery with metallic items. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace that may accidentally touch the terminals.
- Puncture the battery, hammer it or step on it.

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible. Failure to do so may cause a loss of eyesight.



■ Charger

Use only specified power cord with charging device.

Failure to do so may cause the handset, battery and other device to overheat, ignite, bursting, the battery leak or equipment failure.



Do not touch the charging device, power cord, or electrical socket with wet hands.





Warning

■ Handset, Battery & Charging Device

Do not subject the battery or charging device to strong impacts. Doing so may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, or cause other equipment to fail or catch fire.



Do not use the handset, battery and charging device in a place where there is a risk of ignition or explosion. Using these devices in places such as a filling station where there is an inflammable atmosphere such as from propane gas, petrol fumes, or coal, dust, metal, etc., may result in an explosion or fire.



Do not place the handset, battery and charging device in a cooking unit such as a microwave oven or pressure cooker. Doing so may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, or may cause the handset or charging device to overheat, smoke, ignite, or cause damage to the circuits.



Keep the charging terminals, connector, microSD memory card holder and USIM Card slot away from liquids or conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.). Do not insert such objects inside. Failure to observe these precautions may result in short circuits, causing these devices to ignite or malfunction.



If you notice something unusual such as an abnormal sound, smoke or smell, remove the handset, battery and charging device from their power supplies as indicated below and contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43). Be careful not to burn or hurt yourself when removing these devices.



- Handset: Turn the handset off and then remove the battery.
- AC Charger: Unplug the power cord from the AC socket.
- In-Car Charger: Unplug the power cord from the cigarette lighter socket.

■ Handset

Do not use the handset while driving a vehicle. As of 1 November, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offence. When using the handset while walking, be aware of your surroundings and the road conditions.



Do not swing the handset by the earphone or hand strap. Doing so may cause bodily injury, malfunction or damage to the handset.



Turn off the handset near electronic devices. The handset may affect the operation of those devices, such as hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators, other medical electronic equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices. Consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the medical device about radio wave effects.



Turn off the handset in areas where usage is prohibited. The handset may affect the operation of medical or other electronic devices. Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones. Breaking the law may result in punishment.



If you hear thunder while using the handset outdoors, turn the handset off, and move to a safe place immediately. Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the vibration/speaker volume settings.



If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the handset in a breast pocket or inner pocket. If you use the handset near medical electronic devices, the magnet in the handset may cause them to malfunction.




Do not hold the handset to your ear during hands-free operation. Failure to do so may affect your hearing.




Do not put the handset on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation. Air bag inflation may cause the handset to hit you or another person, which may cause injury, malfunction or damage to the handset.



Battery

If charging is not completed within the normal charging time, stop charging ( p.19-32). Failure to do so may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst, or ignite.



If you notice any of these danger signs, remove the battery from the handset: abnormal smell, overheating, discoloration or deformation. Do not use the battery and contact Customer Service ( p.19-43). Failure to do so may cause the battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite.



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water. Failure to do so may result in inflammation of the skin.

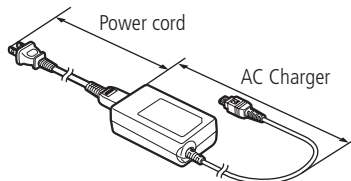


If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources. Failure to do so may result in fire or bursting caused by ignition of the leaked battery fluid.



■ Charging Device

Use the specified socket and voltage. Using the charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or equipment failure.



- AC Charger AC100 V to 240 V (Plug only into home AC outlet)
The power cord included in accessories is for AC Charger (NECAE1) exclusive use. Do not use it for other purposes. Also this power cord is exclusively for use in Japan(AC100V). When charging outside Japan, use only the proper power cord suitable for a standard in the country.
- In-Car Charger DC12/24 V (only for cars with negative grounding).



The In-Car Charger is only for cars with negative grounding. Do not use it in cars with positive grounding as doing so may cause fire.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it and contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).
Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Use only approved fuse to replace the fuse of the in-car charger. Using it with unauthorized fuses may cause fire or equipment failure.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period of time. Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



To prevent overheating, ignition, bursting, fire, electric shock or equipment failure when handling the charging device, do not:



- Touch the charging device, power cord, or electrical socket with wet hands.
- Charge a wet battery.
- Place the charging device in an unstable place while charging. Cover or wrap the charging device with a cloth or futon.
- Use the charging device in a very humid place.
- Short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while the charging device is connected to an electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket. And, touch the terminals with any part of your body.
- Overload electrical sockets or cables. Doing so may cause overheating or fire.

If fluids such as water seep into the charging device, immediately unplug them from the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket. Do not attempt to repair the device yourself. Stop using them and contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43). Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke, or fire.



Wipe any dust off the plug. Failure to do so may cause fire.



Plug the AC Charger into an electrical socket securely. Do not allow it to touch metal. Doing so may cause electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch the handset and charging device. Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



Do not apply excessive force when the power cord cannot be unplugged. Doing so may damage the power cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Business, March 2001).

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the handset at least 22 cm away. Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Turn off the handset in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator. Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.



- Do not bring the handset into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the handset turned off in hospital.
- Keep the handset turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards, as there may be electronic medical devices in your vicinity.
- Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.


Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.








Caution


■ Handset, Battery & Charging Device


Do not keep the handset, battery and charging device in a dusty, humid or hot place. Doing so may cause equipment failure. 

Do not place the handset, battery and charging device on an unstable surface from which they may fall, causing injury or equipment failure. 


Charging the battery, shooting/playing videos, talking on video calls, accessing websites or using S! Appli repeatedly or for a long period of time may increase the temperature of the handset, battery or charging device. Exposing your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long period of time may cause skin irritations, a rash or eczema. Take great care especially when using the handset connected to the charging device continuously for a long period of time. 


If the user is a child, the parent or guardian should teach the child how to handle the device safely. Also, watch to make sure the handset, battery and charging device are being properly used. Failure to observe instructions may cause injury. 


Keep the handset, battery and charging device away from infants. They may mistakenly swallow these devices or sustain injury in other ways. 

When you attach the earphone to the handset to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud. Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident. 

■ Handset

If you use the handset in a car, in rare cases it may affect electronic equipment in the car, depending on the type of car. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failure to do so may compromise safe driving. 

Do not place magnetic cards near the handset or clamp them in the fold of the handset. Magnetic data on debit cards, credit cards, telephone cards, or floppy disks, etc. may be erased. 

Depending on your physical characteristics and other conditions, skin irritations, a rash or eczema may develop in some rare cases. In such cases, immediately stop using the handset and consult a doctor. 

Materials and surface finishes

Part		Material	Surface finish
Outer Case	Key side, Display side	PC resin + Stainless	Acrylic UV cured coating
	External Display side, Battery side, Battery Cover	PC resin	Acrylic UV cured coating
	Macro Switch	PC resin	—
Display screen (include Internal Camera lens)		PC resin	Acrylic UV cured coating
External display screen		Tempered glass	Protect film
External Camera lens		Acrylic resin	Acrylic UV cured coating
Lamp lens		PC resin	—
Hinge cushion		Silicon rubber	—
Display side cushion		Silicon rubber	—
Strap Eyelet		Stainless	—
Keys on Keypad side	Multi Selector	PC resin	Acrylic UV cured coating
	Center Key	PC resin	Acrylic UV cured coating
	Left Softkey/Message Key, Right Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key, Menu/Task Menu Key, Music Key, Start/Call Log Key, Clear/Back Key, Power/End Key, ✕Key, #/Manner Mode Key, Dial Keys	PET resin	Polyester film
	Keypad Ornaments	Silicon rubber	Urethane film
Side Keys		PC resin	—
Connector Cover		ABS resin/Elastomer resin	Acrylic UV cured coating

Part		Material	Surface finish
Battery Compartment	Screw	Steel	Nickel plating
	Shield Cover	Stainless	—
	Battery Terminal	Phosphor bronze	Gold plating
	Printed Wiring Board	epoxy resin	glass epoxy
	USIM Lock	Polyacetal resin	—
	USIM Slot	30%GF-LCP resin/SUS	—
	microSD Slot	30%GF-LCP resin/SUS	—
Battery	Outer Package (laminated part)	Aluminium	PET
	Outer Package (plastic part)	PP resin, PC resin	—
	Terminals	Copper	Gold plating

Do not leave the handset for long periods of time in a place where bright light enters the camera lens.

Light entering through a lens is concentrated and may cause fire or equipment failure.



Take care not to pinch your finger in the hinge when you open the handset. This may cause injury.



Watch out for broken glass if the display or camera lens is damaged. The surfaces of the display and camera lens are covered by plastic panels so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.



If the display is broken and the liquid crystal leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin. If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor. If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap. This liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.



Battery

Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste. Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Insulate the terminals with tape and bring them to a SoftBank Shop or dispose of them separately beforehand according to local regulations.



Charging Device

Do not place heavy objects on the power cord. Doing so may cause electric shock, fire or equipment failure.



Before cleaning the charging device, unplug it from the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



When unplugging the charger from an electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord. Doing so may damage the power cord and cause fire or electric shock.



General Notes

■ For the Use of the Handset

- As the handset uses radio waves, it cannot be used where signals are weak or when the handset is out of service area. Moving to such places during a call may cause the call to be disconnected.
- Do not disturb others when using the handset in public places.
- If receiving a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of the handset data. Please back up the data such as Phone Book entries and image/sound files.
- The handset is a wireless station as stipulated by Japanese Radio Law. Your handset must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- If you use the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio, the handset may affect the operation of these devices. Use the handset as far as possible from these devices.
- Be Aware of Eavesdropping
The handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.

Eavesdropping:

Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally

- When viewing handset display for a long period of time, take the following precautions to protect your eyesight. Be sure the room is brightly lit and maintain distance from the handset display.
- Slip your hand through the strap to hold the 705N terminal. Failure to do so may cause malfunction.
- Do not close the handset with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage to the handset.
- Do not use the In-Car Charger while the engine is not running. Doing so may cause the car battery to run down.

■ Using the Handset in a Vehicle

- Do not use the handset while driving a vehicle. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Breaking the law may result in punishment.
- Pull off the road before using the handset.

- If you use the handset in a car, in rare cases it may affect electronic equipment in the car, depending on the type of car. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failure to do so may compromise safe driving.

Using the Handset in an Aircraft

Do not turn on and use the handset in an aircraft. Doing so may interfere with flight safety and cause an accident. Breaking the law may result in punishment.

Handling the Handset

- Do not allow the handset to become wet. The handset, battery and charging device are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When you carry the handset in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause equipment failure. Damage caused by those devices becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and repair of such devices may be impossible. Even if possible, you are liable for the cost of repairs.
- Clean with a soft dry cloth. Wiping with a wet cloth may cause equipment failure. Also, wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause print or label to fade or other discoloration.
- Clean terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally. Dirty terminals may cause poor contact and the handset may turn off. Also, dirty terminals may prevent proper charging.
- Do not place the handset near the airflow of an air-conditioner. Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and doing so may corrode internal parts.
- Do not apply extreme force to the handset. Placing the handset in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and may cause equipment failure.
- The handset keys or battery may become warm during a voice call, video call, or while charging. This is normal as long as they do not become extremely hot.
- The operating temperature range is from 5 to 40°C and the humidity range is from 35 to 85 percent.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn the element.
- Do not attach a sticker, etc. to the display or keypad. Doing so may wrongly press a key when the handset is folded, or may damage the handset.
- Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc. Doing so may damage the display.

- Do not leave the battery removed or uncharged for an extended period of time (i.e. six months or so). Doing so may alter or erase the setting or data you saved. SoftBank is not liable for any damages incurred by loss or alteration of data in such cases.
- Do not leave the battery uncharged. If you want to store the battery for an extended period of time, remove it from the handset, put it into the plastic bag provided with the product and keep it in a dry and cool place.
- Even if you do not use the handset for an extended period of time, charge the battery at least every six months. Failure to do so may lower the performance or shorten the life.
- Keep the Earphone Jack and Connector covers closed when not in use. Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause equipment failure.
- When pulling the earphone out of the earphone jack, hold the plug instead of the cord. Failure to do so may cause disconnection or equipment failure.
- If you use an outlet that provides pullout prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the handset camera, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Law).

Copyrights

Music, images, computer programs, databases, other copyrighted materials and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplicating these materials is permitted only for individual or home use. If duplication (including conversion of data types), modifications, transfer of duplicates or distribution on networks are performed beyond the above limits without permission of the copyright holders, this constitutes “Literary Piracy” and an “Infringement of Copyright Holder Rights”, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment. Always observe applicable copyright laws when using the functions such as making copies and cameras.

The software loaded on 705N are copyrighted works with the rights of the copyrighters including copyrights or moral rights, and these rights are protected by the copyright law. Do not modify, separate from the hardware, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer any part or all of the software. Also, do not have a third party perform the above things.

SAR Certification Information

705N meets the MPHPT's technical standards regarding radio wave absorption by a human body. These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 705N is 0.870 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MPHPT testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MPHPT's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MPHPT: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>

ARIB: <http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>(Japanese only)

- * The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use

at the ear is 0.75 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 1.01 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of

<http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on FCC ID A98-KMP7N2L1.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

FCC Regulations

This mobile phone complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This mobile phone has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.959 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide**. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.657 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically

below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

- * The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.
- ** Please see General Notes (Electromagnetic Waves) on page p.xxvi for important notes regarding body worn operation.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

The product "705N" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/ EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on <http://www.n-keitai.com/>.

Getting Started

Main Features

USIM Card

(☞ p.1-4)

Contains information such as your phone number. This card can also be used in other USIM Card-compatible handsets.

Global Roaming

(☞ p.2-13)

Supports 3G and GSM. Use the same phone number to make calls in Japan and outside Japan.

New Character Input

(☞ p.3-2)

Installs useful conversion functions such as word, segment predictions and alphanumeric conversion.

Large Font

(☞ p.7-8)

Displays menus and phonebook in large font.

Weather Icon

(☞ p.9-16)

Automatically displays weather in the area where you are with an icon in Standby.

Custom Menu

(☞ p.7-7)

Select the image of the main menu from three pre-installed images or change it to your favorite image.

T9

(☞ p.3-13)

Enter characters with less key operations.

Large Font Input

(☞ p.7-8)

Enter characters in large font on the text entry window.

Desktop

(☞ p.7-5)

Set frequently used functions or phone numbers as desktop icons for easy access.

Camera

(☞ p.6-2)

Shoot a picture or video. After shooting, send images by mail.

Calendar/Tasks

(☞ p.13-2)

Register and manage the events or schedules which have due dates or deadlines.

3D Pictogram

(☞ p.16-30)

Display a received mail with 3D animation.

Answer Phone

(☞ p.13-12)

Register up to five entries on the handset.

Video Calls

(☞ p.5-2)

Talk while viewing each other's image.

Cast

(☞ p.9-14)

Automatically receive a variety of distributed information.

microSD Memory Card

(☞ p.10-8)

Store various data such as pictures, videos, music. Data up to 1GB can be stored.

Music Player

(👉 p.9-2)

Listen to your favorite music downloaded from websites or CDs.

Calculator/Currency**Conversion** (👉 p.13-9)

Perform four arithmetic operations. Also, set the exchange rate and convert to a foreign currency.

Call Rejection

(👉 p.4-4)

Reject calls from specified phone numbers.

Language

(👉 p.1-23)

Switch the display language between Japanese and English.

Bluetooth®

(👉 p.11-2)

Exchange data between your handset and other Bluetooth®-compatible device.

Personal Dictionary

(👉 p.3-11)

For easy access to frequently used Japanese words, save a reading, and just enter the reading on the text entry window to access the word.

Phone Book

(👉 p.4-2)

Register up to 500 entries (up to four phone numbers, three mail addresses and one URL per entry)

Manner Mode

(👉 p.2-16)

Use this mode to notify you of an incoming call with vibration so as not to disturb others

Data Folder

(👉 p.10-2)

Save various kinds of data such as pictures, videos, melodies and text memos.

USB

(👉 p.11-6)

Connect your handset to a PC to transfer files.

Call Forwarding Service

(👉 p.15-3)

Forwards an incoming call to another phone number.

Missed Call Notification

(👉 p.15-6)

Receive SMS notifications on calls you receive while the handset is turned off or out of service area.

Multiparty Call

(👉 p.15-7)

Talk to multiple parties simultaneously or switch between parties.

Caller ID Notification**Service** (👉 p.15-10)

Set whether to show or hide your Caller ID (phone number) when calling another party.

Voice Mail Service

(👉 p.15-5)

Callers can leave messages at Voice Mail Service Center, an incoming call cannot be answered.

Call Waiting Service

(👉 p.15-6)

Answer a call during another call.

Call Barring Service

(👉 p.15-9)

Restrict calls to make or receive.

USIM Card

■ USIM Basics

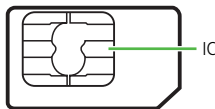
The USIM Card is an IC card that contains your phone number or other owner information. The USIM Card must be installed before using a USIM Card compatible handset. Without the USIM Card, network connections such as making/receiving calls, messaging and web access are not available.

- Phone Book entries and SMS can be stored on the USIM Card.
 - The data stored on the USIM Card are available on other USIM Card-compatible SoftBank handsets.
 - Use the USIM Card with dedicated devices. Using non-dedicated devices may cause data loss or malfunction.
 - Do not put the USIM Card in a cooking unit such as a microwave oven or pressure cooker. Doing so may cause the USIM Card to melt, overheat, emit smoke, lose data, or malfunction.
 - Keep the USIM Card away from small children. They may swallow it, or the card may cause bodily injury.
 - Do not apply excessive force when removing or inserting the USIM Card (Excessive force may cause malfunction. Carefully handle the card to avoid injury).
 - SoftBank shall not be liable for any malfunction caused by inserting the USIM Card into a third party IC card reader.
- The USIM Card may become warm during use. This is normal.
 - Keep the IC chip clean (Touching the IC chip may cause data loss or equipment failure. Avoid touching the IC chip).
 - Do not put labels on the USIM Card. The thickness of labels may cause read/write errors or data corruption.
 - For more details on the USIM Card, read the instructions that came with the USIM Card.
 - Do not drop the USIM Card or subject it to strong impacts. Doing so may cause malfunction.
 - Do not bend the USIM Card or put something heavy on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.

■ General Notes Regarding the USIM Card

- The USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- The USIM Card will be re-issued for a fee if the card is lost or damaged.
- Return the USIM Card to SoftBank when canceling your subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- The specifications and performance of the USIM Card are subject to change without prior notice.

- The data you save to the USIM Card may be lost or altered due to accident or malfunction. Keep a backup of data stored in the USIM Card.
SoftBank shall not be liable for any loss or alteration of data.
- If you have lost the USIM Card or the handset with the USIM Card inserted or if they have been stolen, immediately contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43) to prevent your handset and USIM Card from being used.
- Files saved on the handset or microSD memory card may become inaccessible after handset repair, handset upgrade or USIM replacement.



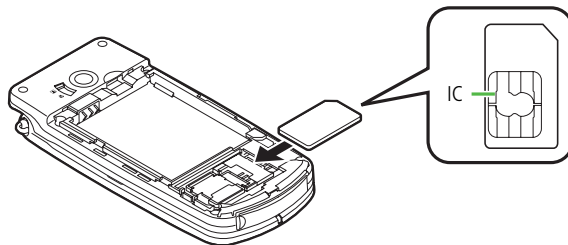
USIM Card

■ Inserting/Removing the USIM Card

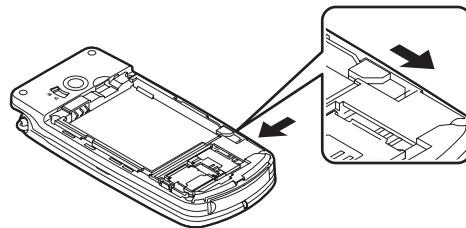
Remove the battery before inserting or removing the USIM Card. See "Inserting/Removing the Battery" (☞ p.1-16) in "Battery & Charger".

■ Inserting the USIM Card

- 1 Position USIM Card with gold plate (IC) facing down and insert into slot

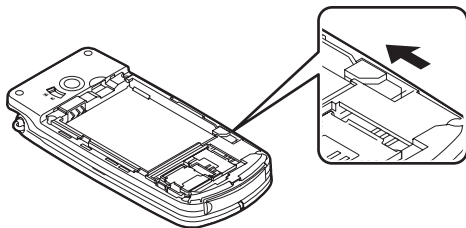


- 2 Gently push USIM Card into place and slide the latch to secure the card

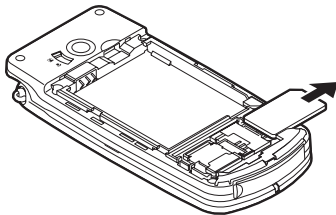


■ Removing the USIM Card

1 Slide the latch



2 Slide USIM Card in the direction of the arrow



● Note ●

- Forcing the USIM Card into the handset may cause damage to the card.
- Keep the USIM Card in a safe place.

- When inserting/removing the USIM Card, do not carelessly touch or scratch the IC part. Also, do not touch battery terminals.
- Inserting another USIM Card will erase the cookies/cache stored in the handset to protect private information.

■ USIM PINs

For security purposes, the USIM has two codes: PIN1 and PIN2.

■ PIN1

PIN1 is a four to eight digit code to prevent unauthorized use of SoftBank handsets by others.

- PIN1 is **9999** by default.
- PIN1 can be changed (☎ p.12-2).
- If **Activate PIN1** is enabled, all operations are locked until you enter PIN1. You are required to enter PIN1 whenever turning on the handset or re-inserting the USIM Card.

■ PIN2

PIN2 is used to reset **Call Time** and **Call Toll** or to limit usage of outgoing calls.

- PIN2 is **9999** by default.
- PIN2 can be changed (☎ p.12-2).

■ PIN Lock & PUK Codes

PIN1 or PIN2 becomes invalid when an incorrect PIN1 or PIN2 is entered three consecutive times. This is called PIN1/PIN2 lock. To cancel PIN1 lock or PIN2 lock, PUK codes are required.

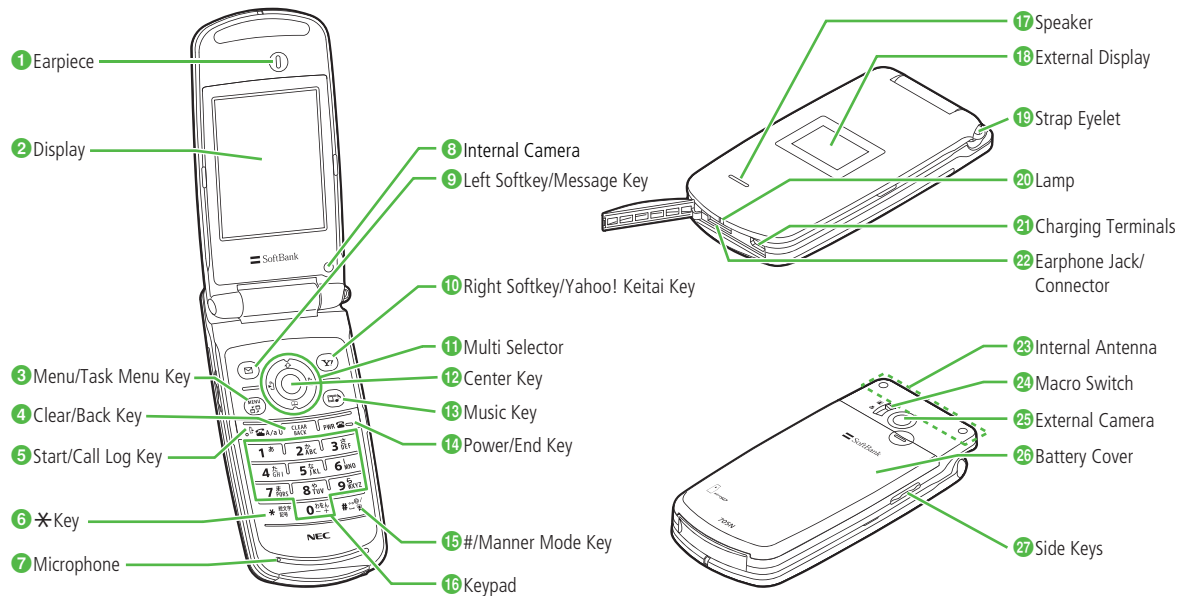
- To obtain a PUK code, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

📌 Note

- If an incorrect PUK1 code is entered ten consecutive times, the USIM Card is locked. Once USIM card is locked, all operations are disabled.
- If an incorrect PUK2 code is entered ten consecutive times, operations requiring PIN2 are disabled.
- Write down PUK codes and retain for future reference.
- When USIM lock is activated, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Handset Parts & Functions

Handset



1 Earpiece**2 Display****3 Menu/Task Menu Key**

Open Main Menu or Task Menu.

4 Clear/Back Key

Return to the previous window or delete characters. Press for 1+ seconds in Standby to set or cancel Answer Phone.

5 Start/Call Log Key

Initiate/answer voice calls. Show Dialed Calls in Standby mode and toggle between upper and lower case letters while entering text.

6 * Key

In text entry, open pictographs or symbols list. Press for 1+ seconds to select a Sound/Mode settings (Normal, Meeting, Outdoor, Drive or Manner).

7 Microphone**8 Internal Camera**

Used for capturing self-portraits in photo/video modes or sending your image during a video call.

9 Left Softkey/Message Key

Activate the function indicated at the lower left of Display.

10 Right Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key

Activate the function indicated at the lower right of Display.

11 Multi Selector

Scroll through menus or Phone Book entries, move cursor or adjust the volume.

a Left/Received Calls Key

Move cursor left or access Received Calls.

b Up/Shortcut Key

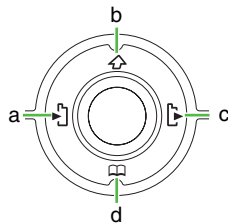
Move cursor up or select a desktop shortcut.

c Right/Call Log Key

Move cursor right or access Dialed Calls.

d Down/Phone Book Key

Move cursor down or access Phone Book.

**12 Center Key**

Select an item/option.

13 Music Key

Start Music Player.

14 Power/End Key

Turn the handset on/off or end a call.

15 #/Manner Mode Key

Enter symbols. Press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel manner mode.

16 Keypad

Enter phone numbers or characters.

17 Speaker**18 External Display**

View operation status.

19 Strap Eyelet

Attach a hand strap.

20 Lamp

Illuminates while charging or flashes when receiving a call or message.

21 Charging Terminals

Connect the AC Charger, In-Car-Charger.

22 Earphone Jack/Connector

Connect the stereo microphone, USB cable or other external devices.

23 Internal Antenna

Contains internal antenna in this part.

24 Macro Switch

Switch between macro mode (🌸) and normal mode (👤).

25 External Camera

Used for capturing images in photo/video modes or sending images during a video call.

26 Battery Cover

Open this cover to install or remove the battery pack.

27 Side Keys

Adjust volume, etc.

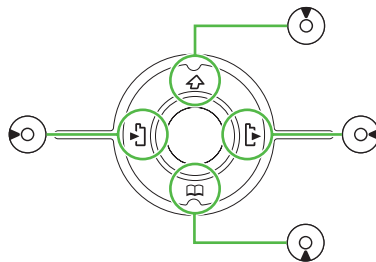
Note**Internal Antenna**

- **705N has no external antenna. Handset transmits/receives signals via Internal Antenna.**
- **Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.**

- **Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.**
- **Avoid attaching metallic straps. Antenna sensitivity will be affected.**

Multi Selector

Use Multi Selector to scroll, select an item or move the cursor.



The following notations are used in this manual:

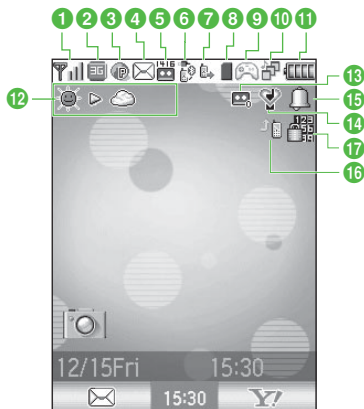
- : Press (Up) or (Down)
- : Press (Left) or (Right)
- : Press (Up), (Down), (Left) or (Right)

Center Key

When using Center Key to select an item or option, the following notation is used.

- : Press Center Key

Display Indicators



- 1 Signal strength (more bars indicate a stronger signal)
OUT Out of service area
- 2 3G (UMTS) network mode
 GSM or GPRS network mode
 3G (UMTS), GSM and GPRS network mode unavailable
- 3 Yahoo! Keitai in progress
 Yahoo! Keitai available
 SSL transmission in progress (☞ p.17-3)
 Packet transmission ready
 Packet transmission (sending)




















- Packet transmission (receiving)
 Packet transmission disconnected
- 4 Unread message (☞ p.16-23)
 Inbox is full
 USIM memory for SMS is full
- 5 Voice Mail message stored at Voice Mail Service Center (☞ p.15-5)
- 6 USB cable connected
 Bluetooth connection is ready (☞ p.11-3)
 Bluetooth connection in progress
 USB cable connected and Bluetooth connection is ready
 USB cable connected and Bluetooth connection in progress
 Software Update in progress
- 7 Voice call in progress
 Voice call on hold
 Video call in progress
- 8 microSD memory card inserted (☞ p.10-9)
 Disabled microSD memory card inserted (☞ p.10-10)
 Accessing microSD memory card
 USB connection to PC (☞ p.11-8)
- 9 S! Appli in progress
 S! Appli paused (☞ p.18-4)

- 10 One task activated
- Two tasks activated
- Three tasks activated
- Music player running
- Music player running and one task activated
- Music player running and more than two tasks activated
- 11 Battery level (see p.1-15)
- 12 etc. Weather Indicator
- 13 Answer Phone On
- 14 Manner mode (see p.2-16)
 - Meeting mode
 - Outdoor mode
 - Driving mode
- 15 Alarm ON
- 16 Voice Mail or Call Forwarding activated
- 17 Dial Lock On
 - All Keys Lock active
 - Side Keys Lock active
 - Side Keys Lock and All Keys Lock active

External Display Indicators



- 1 Signal strength (more bars indicate a stronger signal)
 - OUT Out of service area
- 2 3G (UMTS) network mode
 - GSM or GPRS network mode
 - 3G (UMTS), GSM and GPRS network mode unavailable
- 3 Yahoo! Keitai in progress
 - Yahoo! Keitai available
 - SSL transmission in progress
 - Packet transmission ready
 - Packet transmission (receiving)
 - Packet transmission (sending)
 - Packet transmission disconnected
- 4 Unread message
 - Inbox is full
 - USIM memory for SMS is full

- 5  USB cable connected
-  Bluetooth connection is ready
-  Bluetooth connection in progress
-  USB cable connected and Bluetooth connection is ready
-  USB cable connected and Bluetooth connection in progress
-  Software Update in progress
- 6  Music player running
- 7  Battery level
- 8  S! Appli paused
- 9  Voice Mail message stored at Voice Mail Service Center
( p. 15-5)
- 10  Manner mode
-  Meeting mode
-  Outdoor mode
-  Driving mode
- 11  Dial Lock On
-  All Keys Lock On
-  Side Keys Lock On
-  Side Keys Lock and All Keys Lock On

Tip

- **External Display window will disappear in 15 seconds with no operation when the handset is closed.**

Battery & Charger

Notes on Using Battery & Charger

- Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.
 - Label description: Li-ion
 - Battery type: Lithium-ion
- Charge the battery before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long period of time.
- Even if you do not use the handset for a long period of time, charge the battery at least every six months. If the battery has not been used for a long period of time, it may become unable to be fully charged even after charging is completed and operating time may be reduced.
- The handset is powered by a rechargeable lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries do not have memory effects and therefore can be recharged without fully draining the battery.
- Avoid charging the battery:
 - In environments where the temperature is below 5°C or over 40°C
 - In humid/dusty places or on unstable surfaces
 - Where magnetic waves are emitted e.g. near electric appliances (signals from the handset may cause noises)

- If the battery or charger becomes extremely hot during charging. Stop charging immediately and contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).
- If too many devices are inserted in the socket, it may cause overheating and result in fire.
- When the battery level runs out quickly, replace it with a new one before charging.
- Lithium-ion batteries are valuable and recyclable resources.



- Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste. Insulate the terminals with tape and bring them to a collection point for recycling batteries or to a SoftBank Shop. Dispose of batteries separately beforehand according to local regulations.
- The battery pack may swell slightly as the life comes close to the end and it causes no problem.

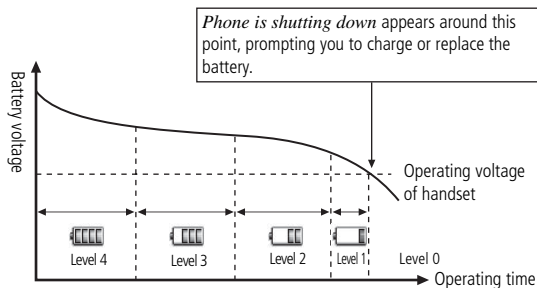
Note

- Use only approved battery and charging device (☎ p.i).
- Insert the battery into the handset before charging. The handset cannot be charged and powered on without the battery.
- The lamp blinking in red during charging indicates battery failure. Contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).
- If "*Check the power supply immediately. Problem with charging voltage.*" appears on the Display, turn the handset off and remove the battery from the handset. Then, recharge the battery. If charging fails again, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).
- Unplug the charger from the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket if you do not intend to use it for a long period of time.

Battery Level

Check the battery level indicated on the display or external display to know when to charge or replace the battery.

The battery level indicator varies as shown:



Battery level (when used in an ambient temperature of 25°C)

Level 4: Full

Level 3: Sufficient

Level 2: Low

Level 1: Empty

Level 0: The handset will stop working in 60 seconds.

When the Battery Runs Out

Phone is shutting down appears, the battery alarm sounds for 10 seconds and the handset will turn off in 60 seconds.



Display



External Display

Tip

- To stop the battery alarm**

Press any key other than Side keys. After stopping the alarm, turn off the handset to charge the battery.

- When the battery runs out during a call**

The battery alarm beeps and the call will automatically end in 20 seconds. End the call and turn off the handset to charge the battery.

- When manner mode is set**

Only the message appears without sounding the battery alarm. The tone sounds through an earphone when it is connected.

Note

- The indicated battery level is an approximate estimate.
- The vibrator works even during charging. Set *Vibration Pattern* to *Pattern Off* to prevent the handset from vibrating.

Battery Life

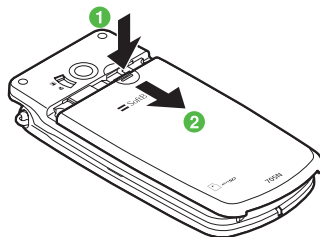
The operating environment of the handset, type of performed operation or settings affects the battery life.

- The battery may drain quickly if:
 - The handset is used or left in an extremely low or high temperature (the operating temperature range should be from 5°C to 40°C).
 - Calls are made in a weak signal area or the handset is in Standby out of service area (Move to a location with stronger radio wave reception level).
 - The battery is not fully charged due to loose contact between dirty charging terminals on the handset, battery or charger device.
- The battery drains faster when:
 - Communication such as video call or Group Talk is continued for a long period of time
 - S! Appli is running
 - The camera or access Bar Code Reader is used continuously
 - Videos, melodies or music files are played
 - The keypad is used continuously for using S! Appli, composing messages, etc.
 - The handset is repeatedly opened and closed
- The battery also drains faster under the following settings:
 - A long time is set in **Power Saving**.
 - **High Backlight** is set in **Backlight** under **Backlight Settings**.

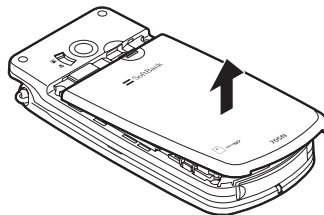
Inserting/Removing the Battery

Inserting the Battery

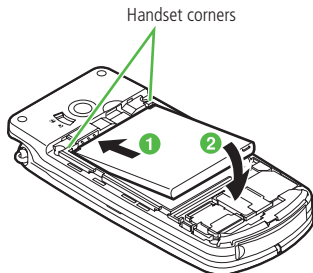
- 1 Press ① and slide battery cover ②



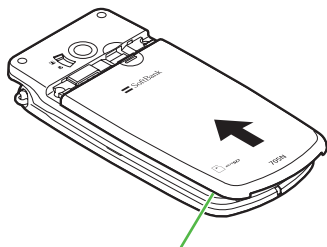
- 2 Lift and remove cover in the direction of the arrow



3 Align contacts and slide in battery to fit under handset corners, as pictured



4 Close the battery cover



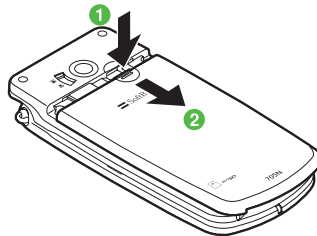
Note

- Do not apply excessive force on the battery when installing it. Doing so may damage the battery contacts of the handset.
- Check that the battery cover is closed securely before using the handset.

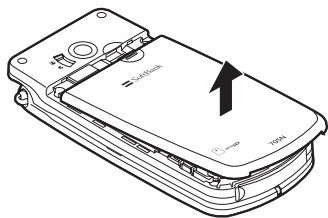
Removing the Battery

Disconnect the handset from the charging device and turn power off before removing the battery.

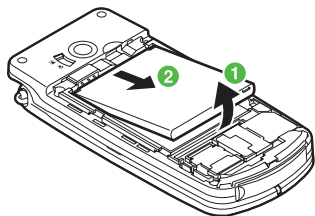
1 Press 1 and slide battery cover 2



- 2** Lift and remove cover in the direction of the arrow

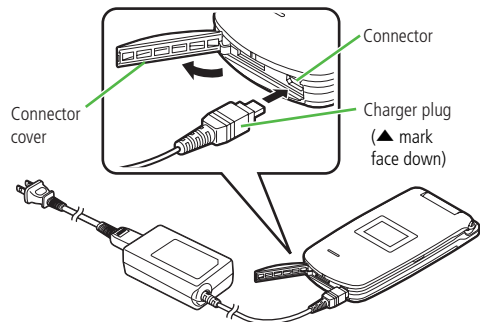


- 3** Lift **1** and slide out **2**

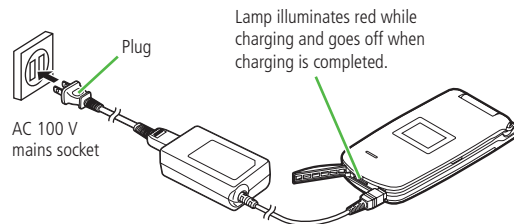


Charging the Battery

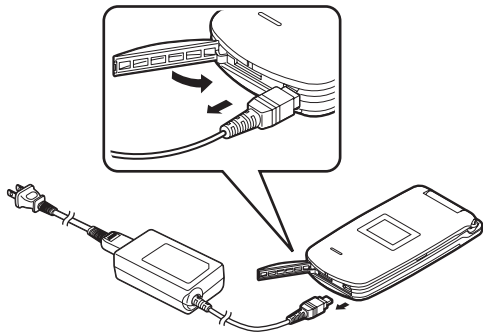
- 1** Open Connector cover and push the charger plug into Connector



- 2** Insert plug into a 100 V AC socket



- 3** Remove the charger plug from the handset and unplug the power cord from the socket



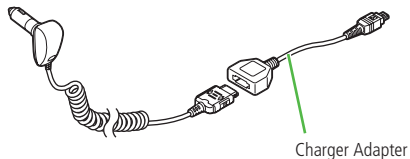
Tip

• **Battery charging**

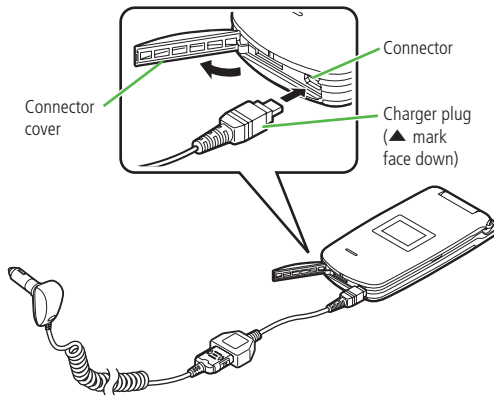
Charging takes longer when the handset is turned on. Also, charging time varies depending on temperature.

Charging with the In-Car Charger

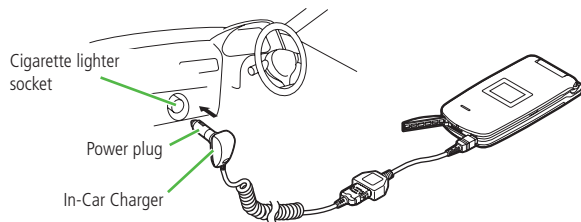
- 1** Connect In-Car Charger with Charger Adapter



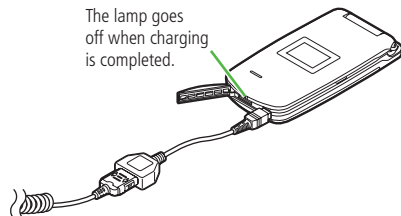
- 2** Open Connector cover and push the charger plug into Connector



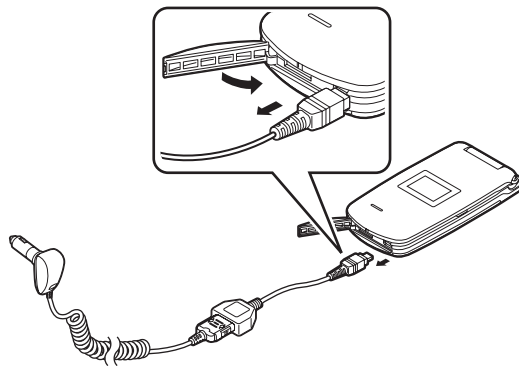
3 Connect the power plug into a cigarette lighter socket



4 Start the car engine to check if the lamp illuminates in red



5 Remove the charger plug from the handset and disconnect the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket



Tip

- **Battery charging**

Charging takes longer when the handset is turned on. Also, charging time varies depending on temperature.


- **For information on how to use an In-Car Charger, see the In-Car Charger user's manual. It is recommended to use an In-Car holder to secure the handset during charging.**

Note

- Do not charge in a car under direct sunlight in high temperature.
- The In-Car Charger is only for cars with negative grounding (DC 12/24 V).

Turning the Handset On/Off

■ Turning the Handset On

- 1 Open the handset
- 2 Press  for 2+ seconds
- 3 Standby window appears



Standby Window

Tip

- If you have set the PIN1
The PIN1 is required each time you turn the handset on (see p.12-2).

Note

- Use both hands to open the handset gently. Applying excessive force may cause damage.

■ Turning the Handset Off


- 1 Press  for 2+ seconds

Initial Settings

Make initial settings before using the handset.

■ Setting Date & Time

The *Do you wish to set the home time?* window appears the first time you turn the handset on. Follow the steps below:

- 1 On the *Do you wish to set the home time?* window, press  (YES)

2 Set the current date and time


To move the cursor

Use 

3 Press (OK)

Tip



- **If you enter a wrong number**

Use  to move the cursor over the wrong number, and re-enter.

- **The date that can be set:**

From 1 January, 2005 to 31 December, 2015

- **To reset the date and time**



Press  and select  (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → *Date & Time* → *SetDate & Time*, and set the current date and time.

Note

- If the date and time are not set, it is not possible to use functions such as SSL/TLS communication (certificate) and S! Appli auto activation, and contents with Reproducible Time/Reproducible Period cannot be retrieved.

To set the clock formats in Standby

[Default] Time Format: 24 Hour Display
 Clock Display: Home Time
 Date Format: yyyy/mm/dd (year/month/date)

① Press  and select  (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → *Date & Time* → *Format*

② Set the formats



- **To hide the clock**

Select *Off* from *Clock Display*.

To set Dual Time and check the time difference from GMT

Set the time difference from Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

[Default] GMT 0:00 (London)

① Press  and select  (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → *Date & Time* → *SetDate & Time*

② Highlight the time zone

Press  and select a city

- **To set Summer Time**

① Perform Step ① above

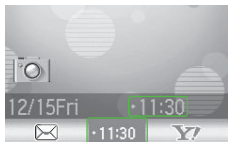
② Select *Summer Time*

- **To check the time**

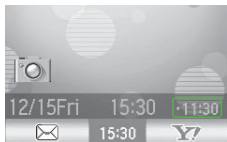
Select *Date & Time* → *View Clocks*

Dual Time display

If you have selected *Dual Time* or *Home and Dual Times* for Clock Display, the clock appears as follows (" · " appears on the left of Dual Time).



Dual Time



Home and Dual Times

Retrieving Network Information

Retrieve NW Info window appears after setting date and time.

1 Press (YES)

Tip

- **If you cancel Step 1 (or fail to retrieve network information)**
Standby window appears. When you press or , the Retrieve NW info window appears again.
- **To manually retrieve network information**
Press and select (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *RetrieveNWInfo*, and press (YES).

Changing the Language Mode

[Default] ■ 日本語 (Japanese)

Changing the Display Language to English

- 1 Press and select (設定 (Settings)) → 一般設定 (Phone Settings) → *Language*
- 2 Select *English*
- 3 Press (OK)

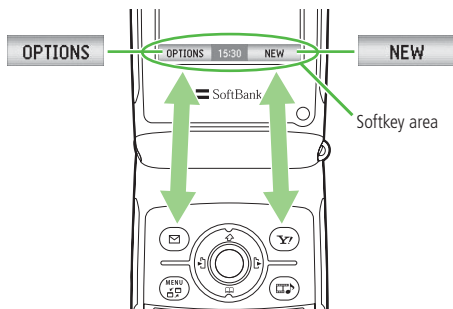
Changing the Display Language to Japanese

- 1 Press and select (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → 言語選択 (Language)
- 2 Select 日本語 (Japanese)
- 3 Press (OK)

Keys & Menus

Softkeys

Each Softkey corresponds to a function/action indicated at the bottom of Display (Softkey area). Press the corresponding Softkey to select/execute the item/task.



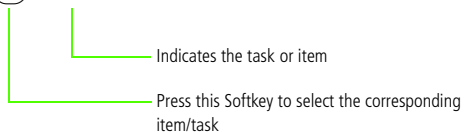
The following notations are used:

- To access the OPTIONS menu → press (OPTIONS)
- To create a new message → press (NEW)

Notation

The following notation is used for Softkey operations:

Press (OPTIONS)



Main Menu

Navigating through Main Menu

Press or in Standby to access Main Menu.

The Main Menu includes nine items. Highlight a Main Menu item and press to open the menu.



Standby Window



Main Menu

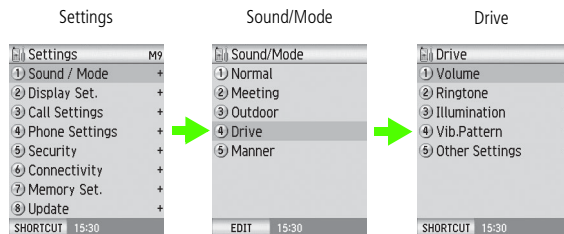
Main Menu item	Function
S! Appli	Access S! Appli from Library or customize the S! Appli settings.
Yahoo! Keitai	Access Web.
Entertainment	View or play images, videos or music.
Camera	Access camera functions and Bar Code Reader.
Data Folder	Save and manage files here. Six folders are available for sorting by file type.
Messaging	Access messaging functions.
Organiser & Tools	Activate applications such as <i>Calendar</i> , <i>Calc./Converter</i> and <i>Voice Recorder</i> .

Main Menu item	Function
Phone Book	Access Phone Book to search entries or customize settings.
Settings	Open the Settings menu to customize your handset.

■ Accessing Sub Menus

Use to select an item and press . Menu items with an "+" appearing to the right indicate sub menus are available. Use to select an item and press to access sub menu.

Example: Selecting *Settings* → *Sound/Mode* and editing *Drive*




Press



(Select *Drive*)
→

Tip

• To close a menu

Press  to close a menu and return to Standby. If more than one task is running, another task becomes active.


• To cancel the current operation

Press  to cancel the current operation and return to Standby or previous window. A message asking whether to cancel the operation may appear. Press  to return to the operation window.

■ Notation of Menu Operation

The following notation is used for procedures to select a Main Menu item, menu item and sub menu item in order:


1 Press  and select  (**Settings**) → *Phone Settings* → *Date & Time* → *SetDate & Time*

"Highlight" instructs you to move the cursor ( or frame) to an item.

■ Selecting menu items with the keypad

Press a corresponding number key for quick access to numbered menu items.

■ Accessing options quickly



To quickly access options for which a number starting with M appears on the upper right of a window, press  and dial keys of the number in Standby.

Accessing *Date & Time* options



M942: Press , [9], [4] and [2]

■ Selecting Multiple Items

Use the following procedure to select multiple items when copying or deleting mail messages, etc.

1 Use  to select an item and press .

2 Repeat Step 1


To select consecutive items, use  several times after Step 1 to highlight the last item and press .

■ My Menu


Add frequently-used applications and functions to My Menu for quick access to them. Up to eight items can be added to My Menu.

■ Accessing My Menu Items


1 Press  twice in Standby or press  and select  (My Menu)

2 Highlight an item and press 


■ Adding Items





- 1 Highlight an item to add to My Menu in a menu window
- 2 Press  (SHORTCUT) and select *Add To My Menu*

Tip

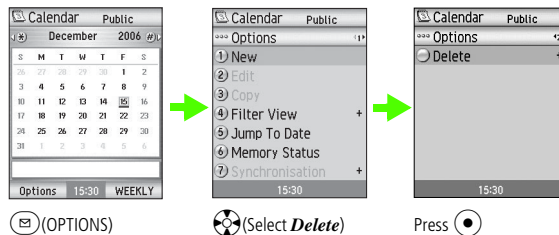
- To create a desktop shortcut in Standby Press  (SHORTCUT) and select *Add To Desktop*.

■ OPTIONS

When "OPTIONS" Softkey appears, press  to open the OPTIONS items that enables you to perform various operations.

- To perform an OPTIONS item, highlight the item and press .
- Use  to switch pages on an OPTIONS item that consists of multiple pages (a page number such as  or  appears at the top right in the window).

Selecting *Delete* from the OPTIONS item of Calendar






■ Notation of Menu Operation

The following notation is used for procedures to select OPTIONS items:

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*

The above procedure means:

- ① Press  (OPTIONS)
- ② Use  to highlight *Delete*
- ③ Press 

Multitasking


Activate one task per Task Group to run up to four tasks simultaneously.

Task Group	Function
Music Player	Music player
Launcher	Playlists on Music player
Web/Messaging	Yahoo! Keitai, Message, CAST, S! Loop
Others	Other than the above


It is not possible to launch another function during a video call. Some functions cannot be run together with other functions (☞ p.19-14).

■ Launching New Tasks


If a function is already running and you want to launch another function, follow the steps below:

- 1 Press 
- 2 Select a menu item from a group with no tasks running

☞ Tip ☞

- A message appears when you attempt to launch a second task from the same group. Select *Yes* to end the running task and launch a new task.
- To launch Music Player, press 

■ Switching Tasks

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds to open the Task Menu
- 2 Select another task

■ Ending Tasks




- 1 In the window of the task you want to quit, press






When the confirmation window appears

Press  (YES)

☞ Tip ☞

- To use the task menu
 - ① Press  for 1+ seconds
 - ② Select a task to end, and press  (QUIT)
 - ③ Press  (YES)

- **To end all running tasks**


- ① Press  for 1+ seconds
- ② Press  (END ALL)
- ③ Press  (YES)

Handset Codes

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use/access some functions/services.

■ Security Code


Security Code is required to access some handset functions. The code is "9999" by default.


- Security Code can be changed from the handset ( p.12-2).
- When Security Code is entered, asterisks appear.
- An error message appears if Security Code is entered incorrectly.

■ Center Access Code

Center Access Code is the four-digit number, assigned when you subscribed to the service. The code is required to set optional services from a landline or to subscribe to Web fee-based information services.

■ Network Password

Network password is a pre-assigned four-digit number, required to restrict handset services. After three consecutive incorrect password entries, Call Barring settings are locked and you need to change Network Password and Center Access Code. To change Center Access Code, contact Customer Service ( p.19-43).

- Network Password can be changed from the handset ( p.15-10).

Note

- **Do not forget Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password. Also, keep these codes and password secret. SoftBank shall not be liable for any damages caused by misuse of the codes and password by others.**

For details on handset codes, contact Customer Service ( p.19-43).

Basic Handset Operations

Making a Call

1 Enter a phone number and press

Always enter the entire phone number and include the area code for landlines.


2 Press to end the call

Tip

• To correct a number

Use  to move the cursor. Press  to delete the number.



• To show/hide caller ID

After Step 1, press  (OPTIONS), select **Notify Caller ID** and then **Add 184(No caller ID)** or **Add 186(caller ID)**.

Alternatively, enter the following prefix before the phone number:

- 186, *31# - Show caller ID
- 184, #31# - Hide caller ID


• Closing the handset while dialing/talking


Terminates dialing/talking. To change the settings, press  and select  (Settings) → **Call Settings** → **Voice Call** → **Close Setting**.

• To adjust the volume while dialing


Press side key / or / for 1+ seconds while dialing.


Making an international call


A separate subscription is required to make an international call. For more information, contact Customer Service ( p.19-43).



For information about available countries/areas and charges, contact Customer Service ( p.19-43)

Follow the steps below to make an international call:

- ① Enter **010**, country code and then a phone number excluding the first **0***
- ② Confirm the phone number and press 

When you are outside Japan, instead of entering the international access code, press  for 1+ seconds in Standby, and + is automatically entered.


To use the default international prefix ( p.14-5), follow the steps below:

- ① Enter the country code and then a phone number excluding the first **0***
- ② Press  (OPTIONS), and select **Prefix → Intern. Call(Japan)**
- ③ Confirm the phone number and press 

* Do not omit the first 0 when calling a landline in Italy.



Caller ID Notification

Set whether to notify the other party of your Caller ID.

For details on functions, see "Caller ID Settings" ( p.15-10).

Options for phone numbers

Press  (OPTIONS), and select from the following options:

Option	Option
Create Phone Book	Register the entered number to the Phone Book ( p.4-3).
Send Message	Launch the Mail.
Copy	Copy the number.
Paste	Paste the copied number.
Notify Caller ID	Select whether to show/hide your caller ID. Add 184(No caller ID): Hide (only in Japan) Add 186(caller ID): Show (only in Japan) Not Notify(#31#): Hide Notify(*31#): Show
Prefix	Select and add the number stored in Prefix ( p.14-5) to the log.

Dialing from Call Logs

Dialed Calls

1 Press /A/a or 

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Call Log* → *Dialed Calls*

2 Highlight the phone number or name and press

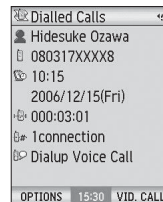
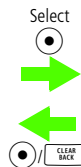


• To check the details before calling

Select the data to display the details, and press .



List



Details

• The latest 20 records of dialed voice and video calls are stored in Dialed Calls.

- **If a number has been dialed more than once**

Only the latest dialed record is logged. To log all dialed records, press and select (Phone Book) → *Call Log* → *Dupli.Records* and select *ON*.

- **If the phone number is stored in the Phone Book**

The name appears on the list. To check the phone number, select the name to display the details.

Received Calls

1 Press

From the Main Menu

Press and select (Phone Book) → *Call Log* → *Received Calls*

2 Highlight the phone number or name and press



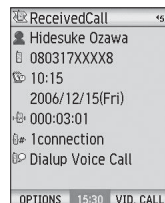
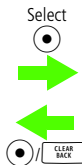
Tip

- **To check the details before calling**

Select the data to display the details, and press .



List



Details

- The latest 20 records of received or missed voice and video calls are stored in Received Calls respectively. If the caller ID was not notified, the reason such as *Payphone* or *No Caller ID* and the date and time are displayed.
- To display missed calls
Press for 1+ seconds in Standby.
- To check the ringing time of the missed call
The details window displays the ringing time in seconds. It is useful to judge whether or not the missed call was a prank call.
- Only the latest dialed record is logged. To log all received records, press and select (Phone Book) → *Call Log* → *Dupli.Records* and select *ON*.

Call Logs

Call logs contains the following items (options):


Option	Description
Dialed Calls	Display previously-dialed calls.

Option	Description
Received Calls	Display received calls.
Missed Calls	Display missed calls.
ClearAllLogs	Delete all logs.
Auto Delete	Set whether to delete logs when turning the handset on. (This option is set to Off by default.) On : Delete automatically Off : Do not delete automatically
Dupli.Records	Set whether to store the same received/dialed records as one record or to store all records. (This option is set to Off by default.) On : Keep them Off : Do not keep them

Call Logs options







The following options are available from the details of Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Missed Calls.

Option	Description
Create Phone Book	Register the log to the Phone Book (p.4-5).
Notify Caller ID	Add the prefix (184, 186, *31#, #31#) to the log.
Prefix	Select and add the number stored in Prefix (p.14-5) to the log.
Send Message	Paste the phone number into a mail message.
Delete this Record	Select one or multiple logs (p.1-26) and delete them.
Clear This Log	Delete all the displayed logs stored in Dialed Calls, Received Calls or Missed Calls

Option	Description
ClearAllLogs	Delete all the logs in the handset.
Use Number	Paste the phone number in Standby. Simply press  to make a call.

Other useful ways to make a call

The following functions are available:

- **Phone Book dialing:** Make a call using Phone Book data (p.4-6).
- **Speed Dialing:** If phone numbers are stored in Entry No. 001 to 099 in the Phone Book, enter a number from 1 to 99 and press . A call is made using Entry No. 001 to 099 in the Phone Book.
Press  and select  (Phone Book) → **Settings** → **Speed Dialling** and then select **On** beforehand.
- **Dialing from a mail or website:** Select a phone number which can be highlighted in a mail message or website. Select **Phone Call** or **Video Call** to make a call.
Press  (OPTIONS) when a confirmation window appears to select whether to notify your Caller ID or not.
- **Earphone switch:** Press the earphone switch for 1+ seconds. A call is made using Entry No. 001 in the Phone Book.
- **Auto Redial:** Set the Auto Redial to On. The call is redialed if it was not made because the other party is on another line.
Press  and select  (Settings) → **Call Settings** → **Voice Call** → **Auto Redial**.
- **Select a phone number from data retrieved with Bar Code Reader to make a call.**









■ Checking Missed Calls or New Messages

If there are missed calls or new messages, an indicator appears in Standby. Select the indicator to access the information.






1 Press in Standby



2 Select a desktop indicator

- : New message(s)
- : Missed voice call(s)
- : Missed video call(s)
- : New Cast info
- : New Content (Melody, Video, etc.)
- : New Answer Phone message(s)
- : New Weather Icon(s)
- : Information about software update

Tip















- To check missed calls, follow either of the two procedures below:
 - Press  for 1+ seconds.
 - Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Call Log* → *Missed Calls*.
- To display all the missed calls from the same party
 - Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Call Log* → *Dupli.Records* and select *On*.

Answering a Call


1 When receiving a call, press or (ANSWER)

2 Press to end the call

Tip

- Using Any Key Answer
 - When *AnyKeyAnswer* is set to *On*, the call is answered by pressing any key ( to , , ,  or  instead of ,  (ANSWER). To change the Any Key Answer settings, press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Voice Call* → *AnyKeyAnswer*.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while the phone is ringing
 - Press /Side key  (to turn up) or /Side key  (to turn down) for 1+ seconds while the phone is ringing.

- **To stop the ringtone sound while ringing (Quick Silent)**

Regardless of the Any Key Answer settings, pressing  while the phone is ringing stops the ringtone sound.

Note

- It may take a long period of time to sort using the Music Player/Mail sorting function. It is not possible to answer a call during the sorting.

Incoming Voice Call display


When the other party notifies you of his/her phone number, the phone number appears. If the phone number is stored in the Phone Book, the registered name appears.

When the other party does not notify you of his/her phone number, the reason (*CallerID Withheld, Payphone, Caller ID Unavailable*) appears.


When You Cannot Answer an Incoming Call

Putting an Incoming Call on Hold (Hold Answer)

Put an incoming call on hold when the call cannot be answered.

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) when receiving a call











- 2 Select *Hold Answer*

- 3 Press  (ANSWER) when you are ready to answer the call

Note



- A calling fee is charged to the caller even while the call is put on hold.

Tip

- Press  while the call is put on hold to end the current call.
- Also answer the held call by pressing  while the call is on hold. When *AnyKeyAnswer* is set to *On*, also answer the call by pressing any one of , , , ,  or  instead of ,  (ANSWER).
- While a call is put on hold, regardless of *Close Setting*, the call remains on hold even when you close the handset. The caller hear the guidance notifying that the call is on hold.

Recording a Message (Answer Phone)



Record the other party's message when a voice call cannot be answered. Keep up to five records, 20 seconds per record.

- 1 When receiving a call, press side key  or press  (OPTIONS) and select *Answer Phone*



Note

- Always keep setting the Answer Phone or change the answering time and message (☎ p.13-12).
- The Answer Phone cannot be used for Video Call or Call Waiting.
- A maximum of five messages can be recorded. If exceeding this number, delete the recorded messages (☎ p.13-14).


Tip

- Press  (ANSWER) while playing the answering message or recording a message to answer a call. In this case, the call record is not stored in Missed Calls.
- The Answer Phone cannot be used when the handset is turned off or out of range. Use the Voice Mail service (☎ p.15-5).
- The Answer Phone cannot be activated when *Incoming Call* is set to *Alert Display* (☎ p.18-6) or the alert display window appears.
- Even if you close the handset while playing the answering message, a message is played/recorded regardless of *Close Setting*.
- The desktop icon continues to be displayed if any one of the messages remain unchecked.
- When Side Keys Lock is set, the Answer Phone cannot be activated using side key  with the handset closed.
- To play answer phone (☎ p.13-14)



Rejecting an Incoming Call

While the phone is ringing, press , or press  (OPTIONS) and select *Reject*.

Tip

- When a call is incoming during a call
Pressing  hangs up the current (held) call.

Preventing Prank Calls

The handset provides you with various functions to prevent prank calls. Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls*.

Option	Description
Unknown	Reject incoming calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the handset or USIM Card Phone Book (☎ p.12-6).
Ignore If NoID	Reject incoming calls without caller IDs (☎ p.12-6).

Operations During a Call

■ Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

[Default]  Level 4

1 Press side key / or / for 1+ seconds during a call

2 Adjust the volume

To turn up the volume

Press or side key

To turn down the volume

Press or side key

Tip

- To adjust the volume from the Main Menu
Press and select (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Recvr. Volume*
- To adjust the volume in Standby
Press or side key , or or side key for 1+ seconds.

Note

- When adjusting the volume during a call, the volume remains same even after ending the call.

Putting a Call on Hold

1 Press (HOLD) during a call

2 Press (RETRIEVE) to return to the call

Tip

- To temporarily put a call on hold, subscribe to the Call Waiting service (p.15-6) or Group Talk service (p.15-7).

Recording a Call (Call Memo)

Record a call for up to 20 seconds. Up to five records are kept. 6th and subsequent records will overwrite the older ones following a confirmation message.

1 Press (OPTIONS) during a call, and select *Call Memo*


2 Press , or (STOP) to end recording

Tip


- Five seconds before the recording ends
A beep sounds indicating that five seconds are left. The recording automatically ends in five seconds.
- To play a voice memo (p.13-15)
- To delete a voice memo (p.13-16)

Switching to Handsfree


Switch to handsfree mode so that you can hear the other party through the speaker.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) during a call, and select **Handsfree On**

To switch from handsfree mode to normal mode

Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Handsfree Off**

Tip

- If **Handsfree On** is set
A voice comes out of the speaker even in manner mode.
- If a **Bluetooth-compatible headset** is attached
Press  for 1+ seconds to switch to speaker or earphone.

Checking Call Time/Costs

■ Displaying Call Time & Costs

■ Displaying Call Time

Display voice call time and video call time on the window during and after a call.

[Default] On



1 Press  and select  (Settings) → **Call Settings** → **Common Set.** → **CalTim/TolInf** → **CallTimeDisp.**

2 Select **On** or **Off**

■ Displaying Call Costs

Display a voice call cost or a video call cost on the window during and after a call.



[Default] Off

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → **Call Settings** → **Common Set.** → **CalTim/TolInf** → **Toll Display**

2 Select **On** or **Off**

■ Checking Total/Previous Call Time & Cost

Check total call time and costs or the previous (last) call time and cost.

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → **Call Settings** → **Common Set.** → **CalTim/TolInf** → **Call Duration or Previous Call**

2 Check the contents

Tip

- **The limits of time and cost to be displayed**

Up to 999 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds for call time and up to 9,999,999 yen for call cost can be displayed. Time and costs exceeding the limits remains "999 :59 : 59" and "9999999 yen".

Note

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing is not counted in the call time/cost. However, on hold time is counted.
- The displayed call time and cost are intended as an approximate guide and may differ from the actual time and costs.
- When using the Group Talk service (p.15-7), the combined total call costs are displayed.
- When making a call outside Japan, the costs may be included in *Call Duration* or *Previous Call*.







Guide to the call time and cost

Call Duration shows the total call time and cost from the previous reset to the latest. *Previous Call* shows the previous call time and cost.

Setting a Limit of Call Costs

If exceeding the total call cost to be set, the notification appears after ending the call. If exceeding the cost to be set, it is not possible to make a voice call or video call except for an emergency call.







Setting a Limit

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *CalTim/TolInf* → *CallUpLimitSet*
- 2 Press  (CHANGE)
- 3 Enter PIN2
- 4 Press  (OK) or 
- 5 Enter the limit for call costs and press  (OK)






Note

- If the total call costs exceeds the limit to be set while talking overseas, the call may terminate automatically.

■ Releasing a Limit

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *CalTim/TolInf* → *CallUpLimitSet*
- 2 Press  (CLEAR)
- 3 Enter PIN2
- 4 Press  (OK) or 
- 5 Press  (YES) on the confirmation window for releasing

■ Resetting Total Call Time or Cost

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *CalTim/TolInf* → *ResetCallDura.*
- 2 Enter PIN2
- 3 Press  (OK) or 
- 4 Select the item to reset and press  (YES)

☾ Tip ☽

- The previous call time or cost can also be reset by *ResetCallDura.*


Checking Owner Information

■ Checking Your Own Phone Number & Mail Address

Check the phone number stored on your USIM Card. The mail address can also be checked if it is registered.

- 1 Press  → 

☾ Tip ☽

- **In the Owner Info.**
Up to four phone numbers, up to three mail addresses, street address, memo, etc. can be registered.
- Since the first phone number is the handset's, it cannot be changed or deleted.
- The owner information can be checked during a call by performing the above operations. In addition, the registered owner information via Mail or Bluetooth can be send by pressing  (SEND) on the Owner Information window.

■ To register *Owner Info.*

Press and select (Phone Book) → *Settings* → *Owner Info.*, and perform the following:

Press to enter the window to edit and register additional information or edit information. Operations to register/edit information are the same as the ones to store in the Phone Book (p.4-3).

■ To delete the registered information

- 1 Select an item to delete in the window for editing
- 2 Press for 1+ seconds
- 3 Press (OK) to delete the phone number, or press to delete other items
- 4 Press (OK)

Calling from Outside Japan (Roaming)

The handset supports three modes: *Automatic*, *3G* and *GSM*.

- *Automatic*: Automatically switches the network among 3G, GSM and GPRS according to the reception.
- *3G*: Uses only 3G network inside and outside Japan.
- *GSM*: Uses only GSM/GPRS network outside Japan.

◀ Tip ▶

- *Automatic* is recommended when using the handset outside Japan.

◀ Note ▶

- For details on Global Roaming, see Global Roaming Guide on the SoftBank Website (www.softbank.jp) or contact Customer Service (p.19-43).
- A separate subscription is required to use the Global Roaming service.

Switching the Network Mode

[Default] 3G

- 1 Press and select (*Settings*) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *3G/GSM Setting*
- 2 Select an item

Making an International Call Outside Japan

1 Enter a phone number


Always enter the entire phone number. If calling a landline, include the area code.

If the other party is outside the country

Press (OPTIONS) and select *Prefix* → the international access code for the country to call

- 2 Press



Tip

- Register the international access code for the country to call. Up to five codes can be stored. It is useful to store the frequently used codes (☞ p.14-5).
- To call someone who is outside the country without using *Prefix*
 - ① Press  for 1+ seconds to display "+"
 - ② Enter the country code
 - ③ Enter the phone number excluding the first "0" (including "0" if the other party is in Italy)
- To make a call to a SoftBank handset
Regardless of the country, follow the steps under "If the other party is outside the country".

Setting Mobile Phone Provider

Change your mobile phone provider depending on the country where you are. Providers can be automatically changed.

[Default] Automatic

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *Select Network*
- 2 Select *Manual* and then a mobile phone provider
To automatically select a provider
Select *Automatic*






Tip

- If *Select a Network* appears in the window, reselect a provider.
- Usually, it is not necessary to change the setting. Set a provider when you connect to a specific network.

Setting Preferred Provider








Preset a preferred mobile phone provider before automatically selecting a mobile phone provider.

Registering Preferred Provider





- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *Pref.Networks*
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) on the preferred provider list and select *Store*
Press  (STORE) if no or one mobile phone provider is registered.
- 3 Select the provider to register and press  (OK)

■ Setting the Priority of Preferred Mobile Phone Providers





Set the priority if more than two providers are registered.

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *Pref.Networks*
- 2 Press  (SORT)
To operate using options
Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Sort*
- 3 Highlight the provider to change the priority and press  (MOVE)
- 4 Move the provider to a preferred place using  and press  (PLACE)
Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to change the priority of multiple providers.


■ Replacing Registered Provider with Another Provider

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *Pref.Networks*
- 2 Highlight the provider to replace
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Replace*
- 4 Select another provider and press  (OK)

■ Deleting Registered Provider

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *Pref.Networks*
- 2 Highlight the provider to delete
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*
- 4 Press  (YES)

■ Checking the Number of Registered Providers and Vacancies

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Network Setup* → *Pref.Networks*
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Registration Status*


Minding Mobile Manners

Be mindful of others when using the handset.





- Turn the handset off in a theater, gallery, etc.
- Do not disturb others in a quiet place such as a restaurant or hotel lobby.
- Follow announcements or posted instructions in buses or trains including high-speed (Shinkansen) bullet trains.
- In order not to disturb pedestrians on the streets, avoid crowds before using the handset.


■ Features that allow you to be well-mannered

• Manner mode

Press  for 1+ seconds to immediately set the manner mode that turns off ringtones or keypad tones.

In addition, settings can be changed for each feature to keep good manners.

- **Vibration** ( p.8-5)
Vibrates to notify you of incoming calls or messages.
- **Ringtone** ( p.8-3)
Set to turn off ringtones for incoming calls or messages.
- **Key Tones** ( p.8-5)
Set to turn off keypad tones.
- **Answer Phone** ( p.13-12)
Put an incoming call on hold when an incoming call cannot be answered.

- **Calendar, Alarm, Tasks** ( p.8-4)

Set to turn off the alarm sound.


Regardless of the settings, the shutter and auto-timer of Camera sound at a given volume.

.....


Setting/Canceling Manner Mode

Use Manner Mode settings in public areas or quiet places to avoid disturbing others.


■ Setting Manner Mode

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds in Standby
The manner mode is set.

■ Canceling Manner Mode

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds in Standby



Tip






- **If a mode other than *Manner* had been selected under *Sound / Mode***
After the manner mode is canceled, the mode is restored to the previously-set mode.
- **If *Manner* had been selected under *Sound / Mode***
After the manner mode is canceled, the mode is reset to *Normal*.
- **In the manner mode, in the window**
 appears.

Making an Emergency Call

Dialing Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Use the following procedures to make emergency calls to 110, 118 or 119 when handset restrictions are set:

Currently Set Restriction	Dialing Procedure
PIN authentication (☞ p.12-2)	Enter emergency number on PIN1 entry window → 
PIN Lock (☞ p.12-3)	Enter emergency number on PIN1 unlock entry window → 

Currently Set Restriction	Dialing Procedure
Dial Locks (☞ p.12-4)	Enter emergency number on Security Code entry window → 
Fixed(FDN) (☞ p.12-5)	Enter emergency number → 
Key Locks (☞ p.12-8)	Enter emergency number → 
Dialing restrictions (☞ p.15-9)	Enter emergency number → 
Call up Limit (☞ p.2-11)	Enter emergency number → 

Note

- **Emergency calls in foreign countries**
Operations may vary by wireless network/signal or handset settings. Emergency calls may not be available in all countries or areas. Please also note, emergency numbers vary by country. Check numbers in advance.

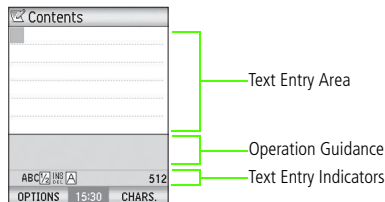
Entering Characters

Entering Characters

Chinese characters (Kanji), Hiragana, Katakana (single-byte/double-byte), alphanumeric characters (single-byte/double-byte), symbols (single-byte/double-byte), pictographs and emoticons can be entered. Some entry modes may be unavailable on some windows. In some cases you may be unable to switch between single-byte and double-byte, enter a space or break a line.

The text entry operations vary depending on the Input Mode. This chapter mainly describes how to enter in **Mode1(Kana)** set at purchase. To enter in **Mode2(2-touch)** or **Mode3(T9)**, see **Changing Input Mode** (👉 p.3-13).

Text Entry Window



Text Entry Area

█: Cursor

Operation Guidance	
CHG	Use to convert characters.
LONG Fix Mode/ Fix End	Fix Mode is available in Mode3(T9) .
/A	Press to toggle upper/lower cases.
LONG LF	Press for 1+ seconds to enter a line feed ().
Back	Press to return to the previous character assigned to the same key when the Input Mode is Mode1(Kana) and you are entering Japanese.

Text Entry Indicators	
	Indicates Mode2(2-touch)/Mode3(T9) . (Does not appear in Mode1(Kana)).
	Indicates Fix Mode in Mode3(T9) .
	Indicates Insert mode or Overwrite mode.
	Indicates the current entry mode.
	Indicates Kuten entry mode.
	Indicates Single-byte mode/Double-byte mode. Single-byte characters cannot be entered in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode.

Text Entry Indicators



Indicates the case mode.

- * The number of remaining bytes or characters that can be entered appears on the right side of Text Entry Indicators. One single-byte alphanumeric character uses one byte, one double-byte character or single-byte katakana uses three bytes, and one line feed uses two bytes.

Text entry/edit interrupted

When a call is incoming during text entry, press to answer it. Press to end the call, and the window returns to the text entry. If Calendar or another alarm is activated, end the alarm to return to the text entry window.

When is pressed during text entry, a message appears asking whether to end the entry. If it is OK to discard the contents, press (YES).

Invalid characters

Valid characters may vary depending on the situations. Invalid characters are converted to spaces or deleted.

Text Entry Modes

Changing Entry Modes

Press (CHARS.) to cycle through entry modes.



Kanji/Hiragana

Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, symbols and numbers.



Katakana

Enter Katakana and symbols.



Alphanumerics

Enter alphabets, numbers and symbols.




Numbers

Enter numbers and symbols.


■ Switching between Single-byte & Double-byte

In Katakana, Alphanumeric or Number mode, single-byte and double-byte entry is available.





- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Editing Options*
- 2 Select *Full* (double-byte) or *Half* (single-byte)

■ Switching between Upper & Lower Cases

The lowercase entry mode is useful when you enter a lowercase string such as abc.

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Editing Options*
- 2 Select *Upper* or *Lower*

Tip

- **To switch between upper and lower cases during text entry**
Move the cursor over a character to switch, and press . This is possible to switch between upper and lower cases only when   /  (Hiragana/Katakana/Alphanumeric) appears on the Operation Guidance.

Key Assignments

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
1 ^あ	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	., @ ? ! - 1	1
2 ^か	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2
3 ^さ	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3
4 ^た	たちつとっ	タチツテトツ	GHghi4	4
5 ^な	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkI5	5
6 ^は	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6
7 ^ま	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7
8 ^や	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8
9 ^ら	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9
0 ^わ	わをんーわ	ワヲンーワ *1	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www .com .html http:// https:// @softbank.ne.jp	0, + (press for 1+ seconds)
* ^{絵文字}	Pictographs/Symbols	Pictographs/Symbols	Pictographs/Symbols	* (Asterisk)
# ^{記号}	* * 2 * * 2 (Space) 、 。 ・ ! ?		(Space) . @ / ! ? () ,	# (Sharp)

*1 Single-byte "ワ" cannot be entered.

*2 When in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode or Katakana (double-byte) entry mode, " or ° appears only when it can be added to the previous character.

■: Single-byte characters only

Entering Characters in Mode1

This section explains how to enter characters in Mode1 (Kana).

■ Entering Kanji/Hiragana

Convert Hiragana to Kanji or enter Hiragana left unconverted.

Example: Entering 庄司美夏

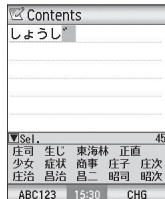
1 Press **(Y)** (CHARS.) to switch to Kanji/Hiragana entry mode

2 Press keys assigned to characters

The candidate appears for every entry of Hiragana character.

To enter Hiragana left unconverted

Press **(O)**



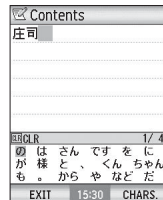
し: **3** twice
 よ: **8** three times
 (lowercase) once
 っ: **1** three times
 じ: **3** twice, **#** once

3 To select one of the candidates, press **(O)** to move the cursor over to the Operation Guidance

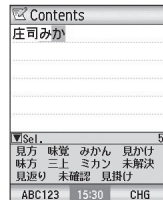
When no candidate appears

Perform Step 6 to 8

4 Select one of the candidates and press **(O)**

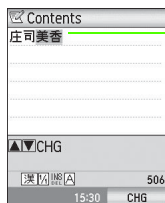


5 Press a key to which the following character is assigned



み: **7** twice
 か: **2** once

6 Press (CHG) to convert Hiragana to Kanji





The Kanji candidates for the segment appear highlighted

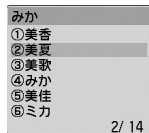
To select the displayed Kanji

Press .

To change the range of the segment

Use  to change the range, and press .

7 Press (CHG) to highlight a candidate




8 Select the Kanji


Tip

- If you pressed a wrong key

Press  to delete the character.

- To continuously enter a character assigned to the same key

Press  to move the cursor to the right.

- To return to the previous character assigned to the same key
Press side key .

- When the target Kanji cannot be found

Attempt another reading. If two or more Kanji characters cannot be converted at a time, change the range to one character and reconvert.


If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten code ( p.19-21).

Predict conversion

The following useful functions are available for Kanji conversion.

- Word prediction

Words/pictographs/emoticons beginning with the entered Hiragana appear as the candidates.

Unfixed character	Example of prediction by default
い	いい いいね いいよ 今 今から います いる 家  行って いつ いた 行き

- Segment prediction

The predicted texts to follow the entered word, based on the category of the entered word or commonly used expressions, appear as the candidates.

Fixed character	Example of prediction by default
メール	して ください 送ります チェック アドレス ちようだい ありがとう

- **Sentence prediction**

The predicted segments to follow the entered Hiragana appear as the candidate.

Fixed character	Example of prediction by default
かも	しれない 。 ね しんない ? しれん . . . しれませ ん 知れない ねー 、 なあ !

- **Prediction function**

Use predicted candidates based on previously entered words. The Prediction function is available in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode under Mode1(Kana) or in Double-byte entry mode under Mode2(2-touch), or available only in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode or Katakana entry mode in Mode 3(T9).

- **To use Prediction**

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Settings* → *Japanese Settings* → *On*

- **Predicted candidates**


Based on previously entered words. Appears in the Operation Guidance.

- **Follower candidates**


Predicted words that should follow entered words. Appears when a word is entered.

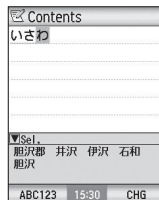
.....


■ Entering Single-byte/Double-byte Alphanumeric Characters or Date/Time in Kanji/Hiragana Entry Mode

It is possible to enter the date and time in double-byte Kana entry mode (conversion to Kanji). For example, press 1230, and press  (ABC123), and "12/30" or "12:30" are displayed.

Example: Entering 11:30

- 1 Press  (CHARS.) to switch to Kanji/Hiragana entry mode
- 2 Press a key to which a character is assigned



[1] :  twice
[3] :  once
[0] :  once




3 Press (ABC123) to display the candidate



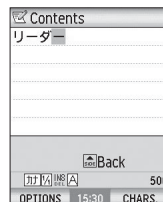
4 Select the time






■ Entering Katakana

Example: Entering double-byte リーダー

- 1 Press  (CHARS.) to switch to Katakana entry mode
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Editing Options*
- 3 Select *Full* (double-byte) and press  (OK)

4 Enter Katakana






- リ:  twice
- ー:  four times
- ダ:  once,  once
- ー:  four times

Tip

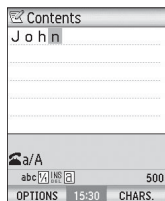
- Text is also entered by selecting the candidates by Entering Kanji/Hiragana (see p.3-6).

■ Entering Alphanumerics

Example: Entering double-byte J o h n

- 1 Press  (CHARS.) to switch to Alphanumeric entry mode
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Editing Options*
- 3 Select *Full* (double-byte) and press  (OK)

4 Enter alphanumerics



J: **5** (JKL) once
 Select (Ⓞ) (OPTIONS) → *Editing Options* →

Lower

O: **6** (MNO) three times
 H: **4** (HIJ) twice
 N: **6** (MNO) twice



Tip

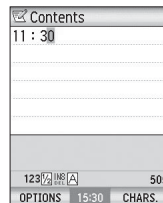
- Alphanumerics is also entered by Kanji/Hiragana entry mode (☞ p.3-6).

Entering Numbers

Example: Entering 11:30

1 Press (☞) (CHARS.) to switch to Number entry mode

2 Enter numbers



11: **1** (*) twice
 ":" : Press (☞) (CHARS.) to switch to Alphabet entry mode, press (☞) (SWITCH), and select ":" from the Symbols list
 3: Press (☞) (CHARS.) to switch to Number entry mode, and press **3** (DEF) once
 0: **0** (0) once



Tip

- Numbers is also entered by Kanji/Hiragana entry mode (☞ p.3-6).





Entering Symbols/Pictographs

For available characters, see *Symbols/Pictographs* (☞ p.19-27) in *Appendix*.


1 Press (☞) while entering text

2 Select a symbol or pictograph



Tip

- **In Number entry mode**
Pressing  does not display Pictographs/Symbols.
- **To use the option**
Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Insert Object* → *Pictographs/Symbols*.
- **To switch between Pictographs and Symbols**
Press  (SWITCH) on *Pictographs/Symbols* window.
- **Entering symbols**
Is categorized into *Fullwidth Symbols*, *Special Symbols*, *Halfwidth Symbols*, *Halfwidth Katakana* and *GSM Symbols*. Use side key  to switch between them.
- **To enter symbols by converting characters**
Enter きごう in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode and attempt to convert it. The candidates appear. This enables the entry and conversion of symbol names such as かつこ or さんかく.




Entering Emoticons

- 1 Enter かお or かおもじ in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode
- 2 Press  (CHG) to highlight a candidate
- 3 Select the emoticon

Tip


- **To use the option**
Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Insert Object* → *Face Mark* while entering text.
- **To convert the meaning to the emoticon**
Enter and convert a meaning such as ありがとう or ばんざい of the emoticon. For available characters, see Emoticon ( p.19-30).

Breaking a Line

Press , press  for 1+ seconds, or press  (OPTIONS) and select *Insert Object* → *New Line*.

Using Kuten Codes

Use four-digit Kuten codes ( p.19-21) to enter characters.




- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Insert Object* → *Insert Kuten Code*
- 2 Enter a Kuten code

Converting Easily (Personal Dictionary)

Register an often-used **Word** with an easy **Reading** to convert easily. For example, entering かい enters (株) × × 海外営業部.

■ Registering a New Word

Up to 100 words can be registered (one word can contain up to 10 single-byte/double-byte characters).

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Own Dictionary*
- 2 Select <New>
- 3 Select *Word* and enter a word to register
- 4 Select *Reading* and enter a reading for the word
- 5 Press  (SAVE)

Tip


- Reading that can be registered
Up to 10 Hiragana characters (ㄅ is converted to ヱ).
- To check the contents
 - ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Select a word

■ Editing/Deleting Words

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Own Dictionary*


2 Highlight a word to edit/delete, and perform the following

To edit the selected word




Press  (EDIT) and edit the word or reading if necessary

To delete the selected word


Press  (OPTIONS), select *Delete* and press  (YES)

Two or more words can be selected at a time. For operations, see "Selecting Multiple Items" ( p.1-26).

To delete all the registered words

- ① Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete All*
- ② Enter Security Code and press  (OK)
- ③ Press  (YES)

■ Quoting Phone Book Data

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Insert Object* → *PBK Quotation* → *Phonebook Data*

Go on to Step 3 when there is a set search method with priority


2 Searching for an entry

To search by group


Select *Groups* and select group

To search by reading



Select *Reading Search*

- 3 Select an entry to quote
- 4 Select the item to quote and press  (OK)



Tip



















- When the search method with priority, except for *Groups*, is set, *Reading Search* is activated.
- It is possible to narrow the search by entering the reading in Phone Book list in *Reading Search*.
- Numeric characters and symbols used for the first letter of the text cannot be the search target.
- *Groups* is only available for searching within the handset Phone Book.
- It is possible to switch the Phone Book in *Reading Search*. Press  (OPTIONS) and select the Phone Book from the Phone Book list in *Reading Search*.

Quoting Owner Information

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Insert Object* → *PBK Quotation* → *Owner Info*
- 2 Select the item to quote and press  (OK)

Changing Input Mode

Select Input Mode from the following three. To switch the modes, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Settings* → *Input Mode*, or press  (CHARS.) for 1+ seconds.

Input Mode	Method	To enter おはよう
Mode1(Kana)	Press a key repeatedly to enter a character assigned to the key.	Press  five times,  once,  three times and  three times.
Mode2(2-touch)	Enter a two-digit number to enter a character ( p.3-17).	Press   ,   ,   and   .
Mode3(T9)	Enter a key to display candidates. Select a candidate ( p.3-13).	Press     and select おはよう from the candidates.

This section explains how to enter characters in Mode3 and in Mode2.

Entering Characters in T9

Mode3(T9) is available in Kanji/Hiragana entry mode and in Katakana entry mode.

Entering Characters

Example: Entering 静子

1 Press **Y7** (CHARS.) to switch to Kanji/Hiragana entry mode

2 Press a key to which a character is assigned



Press **3** (さ column), **3** (さ column), **#** (Dakuten) and **2** (か column)

The candidates appear
When the prediction function is set to **ON**, the previously entered words appear in orange as the candidates.

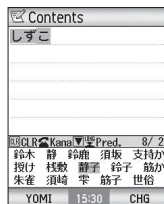
If you pressed a wrong key

Press **CLEAR BACK** to delete the character

When the appropriate candidate does not appear

Press **○** to shorten the range, enter the reading directly, or switch to **Fix Mode**.

3 Press **○** to move on to the area where the prediction candidates are displayed and highlight the candidate



In T9 Katakana entry mode

- ① Use **○** to move the cursor on to the area where the reading appears and select the reading
- ② Use **○** to convert the reading to Kanji

4 Press **●**

Tip

• **Setting the character for conversion**

Set the character for conversion to Kanji or Kana.

Press **☰** (OPTIONS) and select **Settings** → **T9 Kana CHG mode/T9 Kanji CHG mode** (default).

* Either one of **T9 Kana CHG mode** or **T9 Kanji CHG mode** (after switched) appears depending on the current entry mode.

• **Operations while entering**

☰: Switch the character for conversion with the key, regardless of the setting of **T9 Kana CHG mode/T9 Kanji CHG mode**.

○: Press the key longer to display only the predicted candidates.

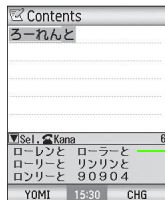
- Characters that are not fixed yet are displayed in gray in Fix mode.

■ Editing a Reading Candidate

Example: Changing ろーれんと to らんらんと

1 Press **(Y7)** (CHARS.) to switch to Kanji/Hiragana entry mode

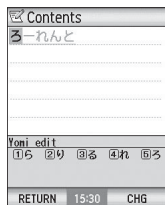
2 Press a key to which a character is assigned



Press **9** (5 column), **0** (わ column),
9 (5 column), **0** (わ column) and
4 (た column)

らんらんと does not appear as a candidate

3 Press **(YMI)**



The cursor moves to the first letter, and characters in 5 column appear in the area where the prediction candidates are displayed.

4 Press a key of the displayed number for a character to enter

If it is unnecessary to edit a character under the cursor

Use **(L/R)** to move the cursor

To end editing the reading

Press **(RETURN)**

5 Press **(C)** and select the candidate, or press **(Y7)** (CHG)

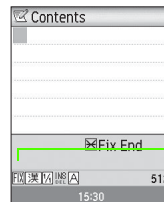
6 Press **(C)**

■ Entering Readings in Fix Mode

Switch to Fix Mode to enter a reading directly.

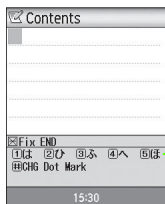
Example: Entering はためく

1 Press ***** for 1+ seconds



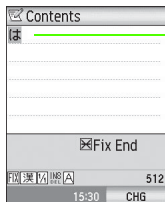
***** changes to **FIX**

2 Press a key to which a character is assigned



Press **6** (は column), and は column characters appear

3 Press a key of the displayed number for a character to enter



Press **1**, and は is entered

4 Repeat the steps to enter a reading

5 Press *** 英文字** to end Fix Mode

6 Press **Q** and select the candidate, or press **Y** (CHG)

7 Press **●**

Key Assignments in T9 Mode

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana (Single-byte/Double-byte)
1 あ	あいうえおあいうえお 1	アイウエオアイウエオ 1
2 か	かきくけこ2	カキクケコ2
3 さ	さしすせそ3	サシスセソ3
4 た	たちつとっ 4	タチツテトツ 4
5 な	なにぬねの5	ナニヌネノ5
6 は	はひふへほ6	ハヒフヘホ6
7 ま	まみむめも7	マミムメモ7
8 や	やゆよやゆよ 8	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8
9 ら	らりるれろ9	ラリルレロ9
0 わ	わをんわー 0	ワヲンワ *ー 0
# 二重	During reading entry: Switch candidates with dakuten or handakuten After entered: (Space) 、 。 ・ ! ? * °	

* Single-byte “ワ” cannot be entered.

Entering Characters in 2-touch

Enter a two-digit number to enter a character corresponding to the number.

Entering Characters

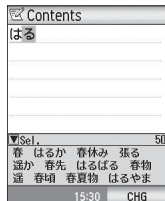
Example: Entering はる

1 Press **Y7** (CHARS.) to switch to Double-byte mode

Tip

• Press **Y7** (CHARS.) to switch between single-byte and double-byte.

2 Enter a two-digit number corresponding to a character



Press **6** **は** **1*** and **9** **る** **3**

Key Assignments in 2-touch Mode

• Double-byte mode

Key		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か か	き き	く く	け け	こ こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ さ	し し	す す	せ せ	そ そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た た	ち ち	つ つ	て て	と と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な な	に に	ぬ ぬ	ね ね	の の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は は	ひ ひ	ふ ふ	へ へ	ほ ほ	Z z	? ?	! !	- -	/ /
	7	ま ま	み み	む む	め め	も も	¥ ¥	& &			
	8	や や	((ゆ ゆ))	よ よ	* *	# #			* *
	9	ら ら	り り	る る	れ れ	ろ ろ	1 1	2 2	3 3	4 4	5 5
	0	わ わ	を を	ん ん	ゝ ゝ	ゞ ゞ	6 6	7 7	8 8	9 9	0 0

* Switch between uppercase (upper) and lowercase (lower)

■: Space

- Single-byte mode

Key		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	ア ア	イ イ	ウ ウ	エ エ	オ オ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	カ カ	キ キ	ク ク	ケ ケ	コ コ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	サ サ	シ シ	ス ス	セ セ	ソ ソ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	タ タ	チ チ	ツ ツ	テ テ	ト ト	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ナ ナ	ニ ニ	ヌ ヌ	ネ ネ	ノ ノ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ハ ハ	ヒ ヒ	フ フ	ヘ ヘ	ホ ホ	Z z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ マ	ミ ミ	ム ム	メ メ	モ モ	¥	&			
	8	ヤ ヤ	((ユ ユ))	ヨ ヨ	*	#			*
	9	ラ ラ	リ リ	ル ル	レ レ	ロ ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	@ @	/ /	- -	_ _	: :	.ne.jp	.co.jp	.ac.jp	@softbank.ne.jp	
	ワ ワ	ヲ ヲ	ン ン	ハ ハ	ホ ホ	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://	


* Switch between uppercase (upper) and lowercase (lower)

■: Space

Editing Characters


Editing Characters

Inserting a Character

1 Use  in Insert mode to move the cursor over a character that will follow a character to be entered

2 Enter a character


Overwriting a Character

1 Use  in Overwrite mode to move the cursor over a character to be overwritten

2 Enter a character

Tip


To switch between Insert and Overwrite mode

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Editing Options* → *Insert* or *Overwrite*.

■ Deleting Characters

Specify a character to delete. Operations vary depending on the Editing Options (DEL/BSP).

■ Setting Key Operations

1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Editing Options*

2 Select *DEL* or *BSP*

DEL mode deletes the character under the cursor.

BSP mode deletes the character before the cursor.


■ Deleting Characters

When there is no character under the cursor, the character before the cursor is deleted.


1 Press 

DEL mode

To delete the character under the cursor


Move the cursor over the character and press 

To delete all the characters under and after the cursor


Press  for 1+ seconds (When the cursor is placed at the end, all the characters are deleted.)

BSP mode

To delete the character before the cursor (on the left of the cursor)

Press 


To delete all the characters before the cursor



Press  for 1+ seconds



■ Copying/Cutting/Pasting

■ Copying/Cutting Text


Specify the range, and copy or cut the text. The text can be repeatedly pasted into another location or text entry window, until the next copy/cut operation.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Copy or Cut*

2 Use  to move the cursor over the first character of text to copy or cut and press 



3 Use  to move the cursor over the last character of text to copy or cut and press 

 **Tip** 

- To copy or cut all the text, press  (ALL TEXT) in Step 2.

■ Pasting Text


Paste copied/cut text.

- 1 Use  to move the cursor to the location
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Paste*

Tip

- **In Insert mode**
The text is pasted into the cursor location.
- **In Overwrite mode**
The text overwrites old text from the cursor location.

■ Moving the Cursor to the Beginning/End of the Text

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Jump*
- 2 Select *To Beginning* or *To End*

Phone Book

Saving Entries to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Save up to 500 entries (up to four phone numbers, three mail addresses and one URL per entry) to the handset. Entries can also be saved to USIM Card. The maximum number of entries to USIM Phone Book varies by the USIM Card type. Access USIM Phone Book entries from other USIM Card-compatible SoftBank handsets.

Entry items:

Item	Description	
	Handset	USIM Card
Name	Up to 96 single-byte (32 double-byte) characters	Up to 25 single-byte (eight double-byte) characters
Reading	Up to 32 single-byte characters	Up to 25 single-byte characters
Phone Number	Up to 32 digits per phone number (Up to four phone numbers)	Up to 32 digits per phone number (Up to two phone numbers)
Mail Address	Up to 90 single-byte characters (Up to three addresses)	Up to 60 single-byte characters (Only one address)
URL	Up to 256 single-byte alphanumeric characters	—



Item	Description	
	Handset	USIM Card
Group	No Group, Colleagues 1 to 3, Family 1 to 3, Friends 1 to 3, Club 1 to 3, Sport, Hobby, VIP, Other	—
Image (Animated GIF)	A still picture or video appears when you receive a Voice Call/Video Call	—
Zip Code	Up to seven digits	—
Address	Up to 186 single-byte (62 double-byte) characters	—
Memo	Up to 150 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters	—
Private	Use this setting to hide/show the entry. On: Hide the entry Off: Show the entry	—
Entry No.	001 to 500	—

Tip


- **Difference of handset Phone Book and USIM Card Phone Book**
Name, reading, phone number, phone number category (for only the second phone number) and mail address can be saved/set in the USIM Phone Book.
- **The number of entries saved in the handset Phone Book**
Up to 500 entries. Up to four phone numbers, three mail addresses and one URL per entry can be saved.
- **The number of entries or characters saved to USIM Card depends on the USIM Card type.**
- **Numbers of still image and movie that can be saved in Phone Book**
Only one still image or movie (animated GIF) can be saved in the handset Phone Book (Only a picture saved in the handset can be specified when displaying the picture).
- **To prevent others from viewing an entry**
Set Private of entry to On and Privacy Display under Phone Book Settings to Off. Privacy Display under Phone Book Settings is set to Off each time the handset is turned on (To change the Privacy Display settings, you must enter the security code). Phone Book information with Private set is not displayed when receiving a call from the phone number.

Creating New Entries



Select storage destination and enter necessary items.

- 1 Press  in Standby, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Create New*

If priority is not set for the search method

A display to select a search method for Phone Book appears. Select a search method to set priority, press  (PRIORITY) and perform Step 1 again.

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Create New*

- 2 Select storage destination
- 3 Select the Name field and enter Name
- 4 Check the Reading and edit as necessary
- 5 Select and enter the items

To add Phone Number and Mail Address

Select *Number* and *Mail Address* and enter

To select a phone number category

Select the category field and select *Mobile*, *Mobile 2*, *Home*, *Office*, *Home FAX*, *Office FAX* or *Other*

To add URL

Select *URL*

To set the Group settings

Select Group

To add the picture

Select *Image* and select a picture from *Image*, or capture an image with *Take Photo*




To add Zip Code and Address

Select *Zip Code* and *Address*



To add Memo

Select *Memo*

To set other items

- ① Press  (OK) to save the entry
- ② Open Phone Book and select the entry
- ③ Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit Phone Book* ( p.4-10)



6 Press  (OK)**Tip****• If assigning Entry No. 001 to 099**

Speed Dialing function allows you to make a call to the entry of the Entry No. simply by entering 1 to 99 and pressing  in Standby. In this case, a voice call is dialed (or the display for composing a new mail/connecting to the web appears, depending on the item) to the party set *Set As Default* ( p.4-8).

• Entry No. change

If the Entry No. is changed to one used for another entry and the edited entry is saved, the numbers are exchanged.



• If receiving a call while creating/editing

The incoming call window appears. Press  or  (ANSWER) to answer an incoming call. When the call ends, the window returns to the previous window.

• To exchange data between the handset and USIM Card

Open the Phone Book list options ( p.4-8).

• Saving location other than the handset and USIM Card

Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Create New* and set the saving location to save the entry to another folder.

Rejected: Register up to 100 phone numbers to reject.

Fixed(FDN): Register up to 30 phone numbers to allow dialing. You are prohibited from making a call to other than the registered number (PIN2 is required to be entered when registering). The Fixed(FDN) is available only when a compatible USIM Card is inserted.



• Other useful ways to make a call

Various functions are available to make a call ( p.2-5).

■ Displaying the registered picture while receiving a call (CLI Display)

When a call is received from an entry saved in the Phone Book and a picture or movie is assigned to the entry, the image appears on the window. The setting can be changed not to display the image.

[Default] On (Displayed)

- ① Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *CLI Display*
- ② Select *On* or *Off*

■ Image display priority

If the settings are duplicated for images displayed while receiving a call, Display priority is as follows:

- ① Image stored in the Phone Book entry
- ② Image stored in the Phone Book group
- ③ Image for incoming calls set at purchase


* When a movie is set for the ringtone, the movie image has the priority.

■ Saving a Number from Call Logs

1 Select a phone number from Dialed Calls or Received Calls, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Create Phone Book*

2 Select *Create New or Additional Data*

Create New (Save new entry)


Select *Create New* and add the entry ( p.4-3)


Additional Data (Save to existing entry)




① Select *Additional Data*


Proceed to Step ③ if Priority is set for search method.

② Select a search method

③ Enter initial letter or number and press  (To search from *Groups*, select a group)


④ Use  and select an entry

⑤ Press  or press  (DETAILS) and  (USE)


⑥ Press  (OK)

☾ Tip ☽

- To switch items for search

Press  on the search result list window and select an item for search.

- To switch Phone Book to search

Press  (OPTIONS) and select the Phone Book from the Phone Book list in Reading Search.

- Only phone number and mail address are allowed to additionally store information.
- The information is not stored when the number of items to add exceeds the limit to be added.

■ Checking Phone Book Memory

Check the number of entries stored in Phone Book, *Services, Rejected* or *Fixed(FDN)*.

1 Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Settings* → *Memory Status*

2 Select an item to check


Setting Groups

Change the existing group names or set a ringtone for each group.

1 Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Search PhBk*

2 Select *Groups*

3 Select a group, edit information and press


 (EDIT)

4 Select and enter each item

5 Press (OK)

Tip

- **Setting a ringtone or answer message for each group**

Highlight a group, press  (EDIT) and make settings in the group setting window.

- **Group names**

Group names can be changed but not deleted. An existing name cannot be used for a new group.

Group Setting Window

Set the following:

Setting		Description
Group name		Enter a group name including up to eight double-byte characters/ 24 single-byte alphanumeric characters.
Group image		Set a picture for the group.
Voice Call Settings	Ringtone	Set a ringtone, etc. for incoming voice calls from entries in the group.
	Vibration	
	Illumination colour	
	Illumination pattern	

4-6


Setting		Description
Video Call Settings	Ringtone	Set a ringtone, etc. for incoming video calls from entries in the group.
	Vibration	
	Illumination colour	
	Illumination pattern	
Message Settings	Ringtone	Set a ringtone, etc. for incoming messages from entries in the group.
	Vibration	
	Illumination colour	
	Illumination pattern	

Using Phone Book


■ Making a Call Using an Entry

■ Set a Search Method with Priority for Easy Entry Usage

1 Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Search PhBk*

2 Select a search method and press  (PRIORITY)

Tip

- The number icon of the search method with priority set appears in yellow.
- To cancel the priority, select the search method with priority set and press  (CANCEL)



Search Entries

- When priority is set for a search method



1 Press  in Standby

2 Search entry



When priority is set for *Reading*

- 1 Enter reading (or partial reading) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry



When priority is set for *Name*

- 1 Enter name (or partial name) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry


When priority is set for *Number*

- 1 Enter phone number (or partial phone number) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry

When priority is set for *Mail Address*

- 1 Enter mail address (or partial mail Address) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry


When priority is set for *Groups*

- 1 Select a group
- 2 Use  to select an entry

- When priority is not set



1 Press  in Standby

From the Main Menu



Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Search PhBk*

2 Select a search method



To search by *Reading*

- 1 Select *Reading* and enter reading (or partial reading) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry



To search by *Name*

- 1 Select *Name* and enter name (or partial name) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry


To search by *Number*

- 1 Select *Number* and enter phone number (or partial phone number) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry

To search by *Mail Address*

- 1 Select *Mail Address* and enter mail address (or partial mail address) and press 
- 2 Use  to select an entry

To search by *Groups*



- 1 Select **Groups** and select a group
- 2 Use  to select an entry

Tip



- **To search handset Phone Book by Entry No.**

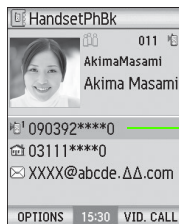
Enter Entry No. then  in Standby.


- **Searching for an entry saved in USIM Card**

The same methods are available (excluding Entry No. search). Searched entries are listed and categorized into **Handset PhBk** and **USIM PhBk**. Press  to switch between the lists.  appears next to entries saved in USIM Card.

Make a Call


- 1 Select the entry and press  to view entry details
- 2 Select a phone number and press 



Use  to select a phone number.


Entry Details

To make a video call

Press  (VID. CALL)

Tip

- **To make a voice call from the list**

Highlight an entry on the list and press . If two or more phone numbers are stored in the entry, a call is made to the phone number set as default.

Entry details options

Perform various operations using the options on the entry details window. Displayed options may vary depending on the highlighted contents or the settings.


Option	Description
Notify Caller ID	Set whether to notify the entry of your Caller ID.
Prefix	Prefix an international access code, etc. to the phone number.
CreateMessage	Send a message to the selected entry.
Delete One	Delete the entry.
Send Phone Book	Save the entry or send in vCard format (only on the handset Phone Book).
Set As Default*	Specify the preferred item among the phone number, e-mail address and URL if stored (The handset Phone Book is only available).
Shortcut	Paste the phone number onto the standby window as a desktop indicator.

* When no item is specified, the first item on a list is preferentially displayed. The mail address appears if the phone number is not saved, or the URL appears when the phone number and the mail address are not saved. If mail address is set for *Set As Default*, the mail address is preferentially displayed even when the phone number is saved.


■ Exchanging Data between Handset & USIM Card

Phone Book data can be copied or moved between the handset and the USIM Card.

■ Copying Phone Book Entries

- 1 Open the source Phone Book list
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Manage Phone BK*
- 3 Select *Copy* or *Copy All*
- 4 Select the destination

■ Moving Phone Book Entries

- 1 Open the source Phone Book list
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Manage Phone BK*
- 3 Select *Move* or *Move All*

4 Select the destination



Tip

- The number of entries or stored on the USIM Card depends on the USIM Card type.

■ Entry list options


The following options are available on the entry list window. Displayed options may vary depending on the contents.

Option	Description
Create New	Create a new entry.
Edit Phone Book	Add a phone number, set other items, etc.
Manage Phone BK	Select one or more entries (p.1-26), and copy, move or delete the entries.
Other Numbers	Select <i>Handset PhBk</i> , <i>USIM PhBk</i> , <i>Services</i> , <i>Rejected</i> or <i>Fixed(FDN)</i> .
Send Phone Book	Save or send the entries in vCard format (available only for Handset Phone Book).
Shortcut	Select <i>Add To Desktop</i> or <i>Add To My Menu</i> to create a shortcut to the entry.

Editing Entries

■ Editing Entries

Edit the contents of entries. To search for an entry and display the details, see Using Phone Book (📖 p.4-6).

- 1 Highlight an entry on the Phone Book list
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit Phone Book*
- 3 Edit the fields
 - To edit Name and Reading
Select *Name* and *Reading*
 - To edit Phone Number, Category, Mail Address and URL
Select *Number*, *Category*, *Mail Address* and *URL*
 - To change the Group settings
Select Group
 - To change the picture
Select *Image* and select a picture from *Image*, or capture an image with *Take Photo*
 - To edit Zip Code and Address
Select *Zip Code* and *Address*
 - To edit Memo
Select *Memo*

4 Select *Other Settings*

To make the settings for incoming

Set *Set Individual Alerts* to **On** and set Voice Call/Video Call/Message Settings.

To Reset To Default

Select *Reset To Default*

To set Private


Set *Private* to **On**

To change Entry No.

Select *Memory No.* between 001 and 500


5 Press (OK)

Tip


- Pressing  on the details window also allows you to edit the entry.
- If the settings are duplicated
The *Other Settings* take priority over the group settings.

■ Deleting Entries

Delete one, two or more, or all entries.

- 1 Highlight an entry to delete on the list
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Manage Phone BK*
- 3 Select items to delete

To delete an entry


Select **Delete One** and press  (YES)

To delete two or more entries

① Select **Select Phone Book**


② Highlight entries to delete

Two or more entries may be highlighted at a time

( p. 1-26).

③ Press  (OPTIONS), select **Delete** and press  (YES)

To delete all entries

Select **Delete All**, press  (YES)

Tip

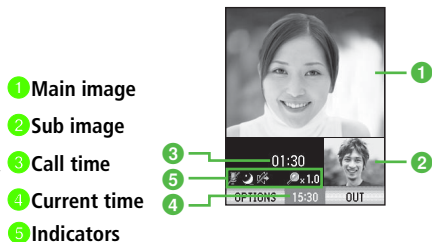
- **To delete all entries**
Entry of Security Code is required.
- **To delete Fixed Dialing numbers**
PIN2 code must be entered.
- **If Privacy Display is set to Off**
Even **Delete All** cannot delete entries with **Private** set to **On**.

Video Call

Before Using Video Calls

Use video call-compatible SoftBank handsets and talk while viewing each other's image.

Video Call Window



- 1 Main image
 - 2 Sub image
 - 3 Call time
 - 4 Current time
 - 5 Indicators
- : Mute on (Does not appear when Mute off)
 : Night Mode On (Does not appear when Off)
 : Handsfree Off (Does not appear when On)
 1.0 to 3.0 : Zoom

Tip

Handsfree

The handsfree is on when the call starts. To switch handsfree off, press (OPTIONS) and select **Other Settings** → **Handsfree Off**.
In manner mode, the other party's voice comes out of the speaker when the handsfree on.

Making a Video Call

A phone number stored or logged in Phone Book, Dialed Calls or Received Calls can be used to make a video call. After the call starts, each other's image appears in the window. To talk while viewing the other party's image, switch **Handsfree On** or use the stereo microphone.

1 Enter a phone number

Include the area code for landline.

2 Check the phone number and press (VID. CALL)

3 Press to end the call

Tip

When a video call cannot be made

A message appears, e.g. *Unable to connect. Dialed number is busy.*

Note

- When Handsfree is switched on, sound is emitted from the speaker. Be mindful not to disturb others.
- When the handset is closed during a video call, the call ends. If it is closed during a video call using a stereo microphone and the camera image, a substitute image is sent to the other party.








Answering a Video Call

Incoming Video Call appears on the display when a video call is incoming. An alternative image can be used instead of an image of yourself.

1 When receiving a video call, press  (ANSWER)

2 Press  to end the call

Tip

- **To answer with an alternative image**
Press 
- **When using the stereo microphone**
Press the switch for 1+ seconds to answer with an alternative image.
- **To hang up a video call without answering it**
Pressing  means **Reject**.
- **To forward an incoming video call**
Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Diverts**.
- **To adjust an earpiece volume during an incoming video call**
During an incoming video call, press  for 1+ seconds or side key  to turn up, or  for 1+ seconds or side key  to turn down.





Note

- Any Key Answer is unavailable to answer a video call.
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker when the handsfree is switched on. Be careful not to disturb others.
- It may take a long period of time to sort using the Music Player/Mail sorting function. A video call cannot be answered while sorting.



Operations During a Video Call

1 Perform key or options operations


To adjust the earpiece volume*

Press  for 1+ seconds or side key  to turn up, or  for 1+ seconds or side key  to turn down

To switch between a live image of yourself and an alternative image

Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Use Live Video** or **Use Photo Instead**. When an alternative image appears,  (SHOW ME) is also available



To switch between handsfree and normal mode

Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Other settings** → **Handsfree On** or **Handsfree Off**. The handsfree is on when the talk starts regardless of the settings.


Display light

Always turned on during a video call


To switch between external camera and internal camera

Press  (OUT)/ (IN)

To switch display between main image and sub image*

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Other Settings* → *Screen Mode*, and select *My Side Is Smaller, My Side Is Larger, Other Side Only* or *My Side Only*


To turn on/off voices and sound

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Mute* or *Unmute*

* The changed settings are kept after the call.

Tip

To set other features



Press  (OPTIONS) and select the following:

Option	Description
Contrast Settings	Select <i>Much Brighter, Brighter, Standard, Darker</i> or <i>Much Darker</i> .
Picture Quality	Select <i>Standard, Better Picture</i> (suitable for objects that do not move much) or <i>Faster Movement</i> (suitable for smoothly moving objects).
Night Mode On* (Night Mode Off)	Make the image clear in a dark place e.g. at night.

Option	Description
Lighting Settings	Select <i>Fine, Cloudy, Auto</i> or <i>Incandescent</i> to create natural lighting.

* Settings remain after the call ends.

To change the video call settings in Standby mode




Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *Camera Set.*, and change the settings of *Screen Mode/Picture Quality/Night Mode*.

Video Call Settings

Setting the Quality of Image

Faster Movement is effective if objects are moving fast.




[Default] Standard

- Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *Camera Set.* → *Picture Quality*
- Select an item
- Press  (OK)

■ Setting the Image to Show When Dialing

Select *Use Live Video* to show a live image of yourself, or *Camera Off* to show an alternative image.

[Default] Use Live Video

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *VideoCallOpt.* → *Show My Image*
- 2 Select an item
- 3 Press  (OK)

■ Selecting an Alternative Image

Set an alternative image to show during a video call. Select a preinstalled image, or select an image from Data Folder.




[Default] Video Call Photo

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *Still Image*
- 2 Select an item
- 3 Press  (OK)

■ Setting What to Do If a Video Call Is Not Connected

Setting *On* redials a voice call automatically if a video call is not connected.

[Default] Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *VideoCallOpt.* → *Voice If No Video*
- 2 Select *On* or *Off*
- 3 Press  (OK)

● Note ●

- It is not redialed when the other party was on another call or out of range or the handset was turned off.

■ Setting Screen Mode During a Video Call

Set the screen mode during a video call. Display only the other party's image or enlarge it.

[Default] My Side Is Smaller

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *Camera Set.* → *Screen Mode*

2 Select an item

3 Press  (OK)

 Tip 

- When *Other Side Only* is set, your image is sent to the other party.

■ Setting Night Mode

5

Video Call

Make the image clear at night or in a dark place.

[Default] Off

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Video Call* → *Camera Set.* → *Night Mode*

2 Select *On* or *Off*

3 Press  (OK)

Camera

Before Using the Camera

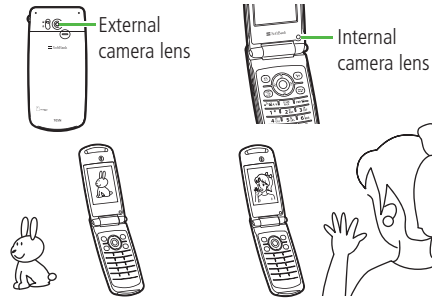
Capture images or videos using the handset camera. Images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.

Tip

- The handset incorporates 2 megapixel CMOS camera on the rear side, and CIF CMOS camera (approximately 100,000 pixels) on the front side.
- Captured images or videos are saved in *Pictures* or *Videos* folder in *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* for which *Auto Save* is selected (p.10-3).

Notes on Capturing Images

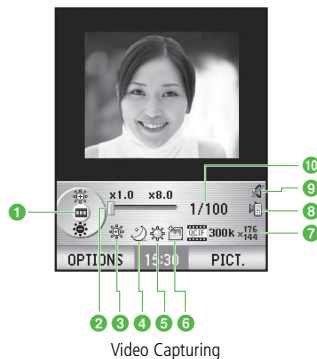
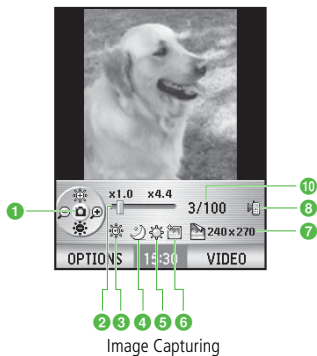
- Fingerprints or grease on the lens reduce image quality. Clean the lens with a soft cloth.
- Images captured with even the slightest handset movement may appear blurred. Hold the handset still when capturing images. Or place the handset on a stable surface and use the Auto Timer.



General Notes on Camera

- Some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- If the handset is left in a warm place before capturing or saving images, image quality may be affected.
- If the camera is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, image colors may change.
- The shutter tone and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in manner mode.
- Insert a microSD memory card into the handset before saving captured images or videos in the card.

Display



1 Camera mode

: Take Picture

: Take Video

2 Zoom status bar

Minimum and maximum zoom levels are indicated.

3 Exposure adjust

~ : Level -2 to +2

4 Night Mode

(Blank): Off

: On

5 White Balance

(Blank): Auto

: Fine

: Cloudy

: Incandescent

6 Picture Quality

: High

: Standard


: Economy

7 Display Settings



Image

 1600 x 1200	: UXGA (1600 x 1200)
 1280 x 960	: SXGA (1280 x 960)
 640 x 480	: VGA (640 x 480)
 352 x 288	: CIF (352 x 288)
 176 x 144	: QCIF (176 x 144)
 128 x 96	: SQCIF (128 x 96)
 240 x 270	: Wallpaper (240 x 270)
 160 x 160	: CLI & ICON (160 x 160)

Video

 300k x 176	: Display setting: QCIF (176 x 144) /File size: 300KB
 176 x 144	: Display setting: QCIF (176 x 144) /File size: Unlimited

8 Storage area

-  : Handset
-  : microSD memory card

9 Sound Settings (video)

(Blank): On (normal)



-  : Image only

10 Number of captured images/Maximum number of captures

Timer indicator for Auto Timer

Capturing duration during video capture

Macro Switch

Use the macro switch beside the external camera to switch between macro mode () and normal mode () .






Keep a distance of approximately 8 cm from a subject in macro mode, or more than 50 cm in normal mode.

Capturing Images

Photo Camera Mode




Choose an image size that suits your purpose (e.g. attaching to mail, setting as wallpaper). Captured images are saved in **Pictures** under Data Folder.

Capturing Images


- 1 Press  and select  (Camera) → **Camera**
- 2 **Frame the shot on Display**
- 3 Press  to shoot the image

Tip


- **To use Auto Timer**

Press  (OPTIONS) and select → **Auto Timer** → **On(10sec)**. Press  to shoot an image in 10 seconds. To cancel the shooting, press .


- **To switch between the internal and external cameras**

Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Camera Direction** while the camera is activated.

- **To zoom in or out**

Use  to zoom in or out by one level (Eight levels are available, except 1600 x 1200).


- **To adjust brightness (exposure)**

Use  to set the level (+2, +1, 0, -1 or -2).


- **To set a captured image as wallpaper**

After shooting, press  (OPTIONS) and select **Wallpaper**.


- **To switch from Picture mode to Video mode**

Press  (VIDEO) which in Picture mode.

- **To reduce window flicker**

A window may flicker due to fluorescent light, etc. Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Camera Settings** → **Image Tuning** → **Mode 1 (50Hz)** or **Mode 2 (60Hz)** to adjust flicker.


- **To rename a file**


After shooting, press  (OPTIONS) and select **Rename**.

- **To shoot successively**

After shooting, press .

OPTIONS menu available before image capturing

To use the OPTIONS menu listed below, press  (OPTIONS) while the camera is activated. Available menu items vary depending on the specified mode or settings.

Option	Description
Image Viewer	Activate Image Viewer.
Camera Direction	Switch between the internal and external cameras.
Display Settings	Select an image size.
Picture Quality	Select an image quality mode.
White Balance	Select a mode suitable for light to adjust the image color.
Night Mode On (Night Mode Off)	Set to On for shooting at night or in a dark place.
Auto Timer	Use Auto Timer.
Camera Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Memory Status Display available memory capacity, the number of images that can be saved. · Display Settings Select to display an image at the same magnification or enlarge it to the size suitable for Display. · Shutter Sound Select from three types of sound. · Image Tuning Change the setting to reduce window flicker.
Bar Code Reader	Activate Bar Code Reader ( p.6-8).

Settings except **Camera Direction** and **Auto Timer** are kept after the camera is deactivated.

■ OPTIONS menu available after image capturing

The following menu is available after shooting:

Option	Description
Rename	Rename a file.
Delete	Delete a last captured image.
Send As Message	Create a new message with a captured image attached.
Wallpaper	Set a captured image as wallpaper.

■ Viewing Images





- 1 Press  and select  (**Data Folder**) → **Pictures**
- 2 Select a folder or a file in folder

Capturing Videos





■ Video Camera Mode

Videos with/without audio can be captured. Captured videos are saved in **Videos** under Data Folder.


■ Capturing Videos

- 1 Press  and select  (**Camera**) → **Video**
- 2 Frame the shot on Display
- 3 Press  to shoot the video
- 4 Press  to end shooting


Tip

- **To cancel shooting**
Press  while shooting.
- **The available durations when capturing limit is set to 300 KB are as follows**
About 30 seconds when **Picture Quality** is set to **High**, about 45 seconds for **Standard**, about 60 seconds for **Economy**.
These durations vary depending on the data size due to the capturing conditions.
- **To switch between the internal and external cameras**
Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Camera Direction** while the camera is activated.
- **To capture videos without audio**
Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Sound Settings** → **Video Only** while the camera is activated.
- **To zoom in or out**
Use  to zoom in or out by one level (Eight levels are available). This operation is also available while shooting.


- **To adjust brightness (exposure)**

Use  to set the level (+2, +1, 0, -1 or -2).


- **To switch from Video mode to Picture mode**

Press  (PICT.) while in Video mode.


- **To reduce window flicker**

A window may flicker due to fluorescent light, etc. Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Camera Settings** → **Image Tuning** → **Mode 1 (50Hz)** or **Mode 2 (60Hz)** to adjust flicker.

- **To rename a file**

After shooting, press  (OPTIONS) and select **Rename**.

- **To shoot successively**

After shooting, press .

- **When exceeding the memory capacity during video capturing**


Capturing automatically ends, captured video is saved.

.....

■ OPTIONS item available before video capturing

The following menu is available while the camera is activated. Available menu items vary depending on the specified mode or settings.

Option	Description
Videos	Activate Video Player.
Camera Direction	Switch between the internal and external cameras.
Picture Quality	Select an image quality mode.
While Balance	Select a mode suitable for light to adjust the image color.

Option	Description
Night Mode On (Night Mode Off)	Set to On for shooting at night or in a dark place.
Sound Settings	Select whether to record sound.
Camera Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Memory Status Display available memory capacity, the number of images that can be saved. · File Size Limit Set the maximum file size. · Display Settings Display an image at the same magnification or enlarge it to a size suitable for Display. · Shutter Sound Select from three types of sound. · Image Tuning Change the setting to reduce window flicker.
Bar Code Reader	Activate Bar Code Reader ( p.6-8).



■ OPTIONS item available after video capturing

The following menu is available after shooting:

Option	Description
Rename	Rename a file.
Delete	Delete a saved image.
Send As Message	Create a new message with a captured video attached.


.....

■ Playing Videos

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder) → *Videos*
- 2 Select a file on the list or from a folder

Sending Images or Videos

Attach a captured image or video to a message to send it.


- 1 After shooting, press  (SEND)
A large video file may not be attached to a message.
- 2 Enter an address, subject and message on the New Message window to send the message



Bar Code Reader

Use Bar Code Reader to scan bar codes (QR codes)* including information such as phone numbers, mail addresses, images and melodies. Scanned information data can be saved in the handset.

* QR code is two-dimensional code type that contains information in the vertical and horizontal directions.

The handset does not support multiple QR codes sharing the same information, or bar codes or two-dimensional codes other than QR code. If a code not supported in the handset is scanned, a blank appears.

Turn the macro switch to macro mode () before scanning codes. Hold the handset still while scanning codes. Scanned data can be viewed or saved in the handset (up to five data files).

- 1 Press  and select  (Camera) → *BarCodeReader*


If no data file is saved

Go to Step 2.


If data files are saved

Select <NEW> and go to Step 2.

If five data files are saved

Select <NEW> and press  (YES), or:

① Highlight an unnecessary file, press  (OPTIONS), select

Delete and press  (YES)

② Select <NEW> and go to step 2

- 2 Frame a bar code on the scanning area



Focus on the code to display it as large as possible.



3 Press to capture the code and view the information



Scan Result

* The information on the left is the URL of NEC SUPER TOWN.

To rescan a code

- 1 Press  and  (YES)
- 2 Repeat the above procedure from step 1

4 Use or save the scanned information


To save scanned data

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Save*.


To add a URL to bookmark

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Add Bookmark*.


To add information to Phone Book

Select *Create Phone Book* from the OPTIONS item ( p.4-2).


To save an image

Move cursor to an image icon, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Save File*.

To save a melody


Move cursor to a melody icon, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Save File*.


To copy text on the scan result window

Press  (OPTIONS), select *Copy* and select the start and end points.

Other available operations

Make a voice call: Select a phone number

Make a video call: Highlight a phone number and press  (Video Call)

Create a message: Select a mail address ( p.16-4)

Access web: Select the URL with <http://>

Display an image/playback a melody: Select image/melody

Display & Lighting

Display

Set a calendar or image as the standby window.


■ Setting a Calendar or Image on the Display

- [Default]
- Start Up Animation: Welcome 1
 - Start Up Sound: No Setting
 - Shutdown Image: See You 1
 - Set as Wallpaper: Simple
 - Calendar: Off
 - Operator Set.: Off

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *Internal Disp.*


2 Select an item to set

To display an image or create sound when turning on or off the handset


- ① Select *Greeting*
- ② Set *Start Up Animation*, *Start Up Sound* or *Shutdown Image*
- ③ Press  (OK)

To change the wallpaper in Standby

- ① Select *Wallpaper*

- ② Select *Set as Wallpaper*
- ③ Select an image from a folder
- ④ Press  (OK)

To set a calendar as standby window

- ① Select *Wallpaper*
- ② Select *Calendar*
- ③ Select *On*
- ④ Press  (OK)

To display or hide the name of connected carrier

- ⑤ Select *Operator Set.*
- ⑥ Select *On* or *Off*

Tip

- Pre-installed, downloaded and captured images are available for this setting.
- The image set as wallpaper is resized to fit into the standby window when appearing on it.

■ Hiding Information on the External Display

[Default] On

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *ExternalDisplay* → *Ext.Disp.Set.*

2 Select *Off*

■ Selecting the External Display Clock Style

[Default] Normal Clock

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *ExternalDisplay* → *Clock Style*

2 Select an item to set

 Tip 

- Pressing Side keys when the handset is folded also enables you to change the clock display.

■ Hiding Notification on the External Display

[Default] Off

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *ExternalDisplay* → *Standby*


2 Select *On*

 Tip 

- To hide only call notification or message notification even if *Standby* is *OFF*

① Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.* →
ExternalDisplay → *Indication Info.*

② Select *Incoming Calls* or *Receiving Messages* → *Off*

③ Press  (OK)

 Note 

- When *Standby* is *On*, this setting does not show playback window on External Display.

Display Light

Customize the lighting settings of Display and keypad.


■ Customizing the Display Light Settings

[Default] ■ Backlight: Medium Backlight
■ Backlight time(5s-60s): 15 Sec.

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *Internal Disp.* → *Backlight Set.*




2 Select an item to set

To set the lighting settings

- ① Select *Backlight* → *Backlight Off, Low Backlight, Medium Backlight* or *High Backlight*
- ② Select *Backlight time(5s-60s)* and set time between 5 and 60 seconds
- ③ Press  (OK)

■ Setting the Display Power Saving Function

[Default] ■ 5 Minutes

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *Internal Disp.* → *Power Saving*
- 2 Select *Power Save Time (1-20)* and set time between 1 and 20 minutes
- 3 Press  (OK)

Using Desktop Icons

Add shortcuts to frequently-used functions, files or phone numbers as desktop icons in Standby to access them using simple steps. Add up to eight icons.



Desktop Icons in Standby

The available desktop icons are:

Desktop icon	Description
Calendar, Alarms, Tasks, Calc./ Converter, Notepad, Answer Phone, Voice Recorder, Own Dictionary, Menus under Settings (except menus under Sound/ Mode or Update), Bar Code Reader, Camera, Video, Music Player, all menus under Media Player, CAST, S! Loop	Activate the corresponding function.
Folders under Data Folder (Pictures, Ringtones, S! Appli, Music, Videos, Memory Card, Other Folders) and files	Access the corresponding folder or file.

Desktop icon	Description
Phone Book entry (phone number, mail address, etc.), S! Appli, Bookmarks, Notepad data, Bar Code Reader data	Open the window (Phone Book entry, website, etc.) including corresponding data.

Tip

- When event icons (missed calls or new messages) are displayed, they will appear prior to desktop shortcuts (all functions or personal data). No desktop shortcuts are displayed until event icons are deleted.

Note

- When a calendar is set in Standby on which more than four icons are pasted (see p.7-2), only four icons at the bottom appear.


Adding Desktop Icons

On a function window, press (SHORTCUT) and select **Add To Desktop** to add the icon to the desktop.

Adding the **Display Set.** icon

- Press and select (Settings)
- Highlight **Display Set.**
- Press (SHORTCUT) and select **Add To Desktop**


■ Accessing a Function or Data from a Desktop Icon

- 1 Press  in Standby
- 2 Select a desktop icon

■ Checking Desktop Icon Properties

- 1 Select a desktop icon in Standby
- 2 The property name appears at the bottom of the window




■ Changing Desktop Icon Designs

- 1 Select a desktop icon in Standby
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Replace Icon* → *Select New Image*
- 3 Select a file and set an image




☾ Tip ☽

- If the image file size differs from the icon size, select *Reduction*, *Enlarge*, *Use As Is* or *Use Centre Only* to resize the file.
- Resetting desktop icon designs
Select *Replace Icon* in Step 2 → *Use Default Image*




■ Setting a Captured Image as Desktop Icon

- 1 Select a desktop icon in Standby
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Replace Icon* → *Create Image*
- 3 Frame the shot on Display
- 4 Press  to shoot the image and press  (OK)

■ Moving Desktop Icons

- 1 Select a desktop icon in Standby
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Move Shortcut*
- 3 Move the cursor to the desired position and press  or  (PLACE)

■ Deleting Desktop Icons






- 1 Select a desktop icon in Standby
- 2 Press  (DELETE) or  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete Shortcut*
- 3 Press  (YES)

Changing Main Menu

■ Changing Menu Image

Change Main Menu icon and background.

[Default]  Theme 1


- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.* → *Internal Disp.* → *Menu Setting*
- 2 Select *Theme1*, *Theme2* or *Theme3* in *Menu Title*
When displaying preview
 - ① Select *Menu Title* and highlight Theme
 - ② Press  (PREVIEW) or  (OPTIONS) and select *Preview*
- 3 Press  (OK)

◀ Tip ▶

- When theme is changed, all icons are to be changed.

■ Changing Main Menu Icon

Change the Main Menu icon.

- 1 Highlight an icon on the Main Menu
- 2 Press  (REPLACE) and select an item to set

To set an image in Data Folder as Main Menu icon

- ① Select *Select New Image*
- ② Select a file and set an image

To set a captured image as Main Menu icon

- ① Select *Create Image*
- ② Shoot an image and press  (OK)

To reset a changed Main Menu icon

Select *Use Default Image*

◀ Tip ▶

- If you attempt to set an image in Data Folder as Main Menu icon and the image file size differs from the icon size, select *Reduction*, *Enlarge*, *Use As Is* or *Use Centre Only* to resize the file.
- Other applications cannot be activated while shooting with the camera activated by selecting *Create Image*.

Changing Font Type

Select from 2 types of font for Display.

[Default] Font 1

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *Font Type*

2 Select *Font 1* or *Font 2*

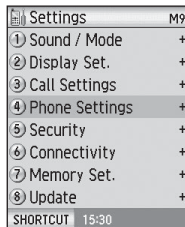
 Tip

- If *Font Size* is set to *Small* in *Website* or *Message* setting, font cannot be changed.
- When *Large Font Set* setting is set to *On*, font can be changed except the characters of *Large Font*.

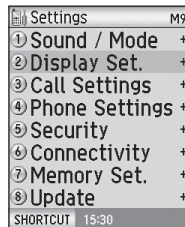
Large Font

The characters or clock are displayed in large size on the following window: Menu window, Phone Book window, dialing or incoming call window, text entry window, or clock (except calendar) in Standby.

[Default] Off



Normal Window



Large Font Window





1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Display Set.*
→ *Large Font Set*

2 Select *On*

Illumination

Customize the settings for illumination color when calls arrive. Select from 12 illumination patterns (three LED colors (*Colour One* to *Three*)) x four illumination patterns (*Pattern One* to *Three* and *Link To Melody*). To disable illumination, select *Off*.

[Default] Voice Calls: Colour Two
Video Calls: Colour Two
Messages: Colour One
(All illumination patterns are Pattern One)

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Sound / Mode*
- 2 Highlight a mode, press  (EDIT) and select *Illumination*
- 3 Set an illumination color and pattern for each item
When selecting except normal mode in Step 2
When setting to *Normal*, the illumination is set to the same color and pattern is set to the normal mode
- 4 Press  (OK)

Tip

- In *Illumination*, set an illumination color and pattern separately for *Voice Calls*, *Video Calls* and *Messages*.
- The actual illumination color and pattern can be previewed before they are set in *Illumination*.
- Illumination does not light up during a call.

Sounds

Mode

Depending on the situation, switch the sound and vibrator mode between Normal, Meeting, Outdoor, Drive and Manner.

[Default]  Normal mode

Types of Each Mode

- **Normal mode**
Mode for normal situations.
- **Meeting mode**
The handset vibrates without sound when receiving a call.
- **Outdoor mode**
The sound volume is set at the maximum level.
- **Drive mode**
The automatic answering function works instead of vibrator when receiving a call.
- **Manner mode**
Pressing one key enables you to set this mode to turn off sounds that may disturb others.

Tip

- Customize the settings except for Manner mode.
- Even if Manner mode is set or volume is set to *Silent*, the handset emits sounds when Handsfree or the camera is activated.

Default Settings



Mode Settings	Normal	Meeting	Outdoor	Drive	Manner
Volume (Ringtone Volume, Alarm Volume)	Level 4	Silent	Level 6	Level 4	Silent
Vib.Pattern	Pattern Off	Pattern One	Pattern One	Pattern Off	Pattern Two
Key Tones/Charge Tone	On	Off	On	On	Off
Coverage Tone	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Auto Answer	Off	Off	Off	On	Off

Mode Setting

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Sound / Mode*

2 Select a mode

Tip

- In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to switch the modes from the mode list.
- In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to switch between the currently set mode and Manner mode.





Sound Settings

Ringtone

Volume

Select the ringtone volume level from **Level 1** to **6** and **Silent**.

[Default] Level 4

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Sound / Mode*
- 2 Highlight a mode, press  (EDIT) and select *Volume*
- 3 Select *Ringtone Volume* and set a level
- 4 Press  (OK)

Tip







- **When Manner mode is set**

The volume is always set to **Silent**. When a stereo microphone is connected, **Level 1** is always set.

Ringtone

Set ringtones that sound when Voice Calls, Video Calls or Messages arrive. Also, set the ringing time for incoming messages.

[Default] Voice Calls: Melody 1
 Video Calls: Melody 1
 Messages: Melody 2
 MsgRingTime: 5 Sec.

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Sound / Mode*
- 2 Highlight a mode, press  (EDIT) and select *Ringtone*
- 3 Select *Voice Calls, Video Calls or Messages*
- 4 Select a ringtone
To check a melody before setting it as ringtone
Highlight a melody and press  (PREVIEW) or  (OPTIONS) and select *Preview*
- 5 Select *MsgRingTime (1s-30s)* and set time
- 6 Press  (OK)

Tip

- **When Manner mode is set**

Ringtone for the manner mode cannot be changed. However, if you use the stereo microphone set, **Melody 1** is set for **Voice calls** and **Video calls**, and **Melody 2** for **Messages**.

- **Music file formats available for ringtone**

The supported file formats are MIDI, SMAF, AMR, MP3 and MP4.

The following types of files are not available:

- MP4 and MP3 files copied from music CDs, etc.
- MP3 files not in DRM SD format
- SMAF files including animation
- MP4 movie files as ringtone for **Messages**

- **Pre-installed ringtones and melodies**

Name
Alarm 1
Melody 1
Melody 2
Melody 3
Melody 4
Melody 5
Melody 6
Melody 7
Melody 8
Melody 9
Alarm 2

Name
Alarm 3
Alarm 4
Alarm 5
No Sound





Note

- **Some files may not be set as ringtone.**
- **Files saved in the microSD memory card cannot be set as ringtone.**
- **Movie files cannot be set as ringtone for messages.**

Alarm Volume

Select alarm volume level for Calendar, Alarm, or Tasks from **Level 1** to **6** and **Silent**.

[Default] Level 4

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → **Sound / Mode**
- 2 Highlight a mode, press  (EDIT) and select **Volume**
- 3 Select **Alarm Volume** and set a level
- 4 Press  (OK)

Tip





- **When Manner mode is set**

The volume is always set to *Silent*. When a stereo microphone is connected, *Level 1* is always set.

Vibrator

Set the handset to vibrate when voice calls, video calls or messages arrive. Select the vibration pattern from *Pattern One* to *Three*, *Link To Melody* or *Pattern Off*.

[Default] Pattern Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Sound / Mode*
- 2 Highlight a mode, press  (EDIT) and select *Vib. Pattern*
- 3 Select a pattern
- 4 Press  (OK)

Tip

- **When Manner mode is set**

Pattern Two is always set for the vibration pattern.

- **When the alarm setting is set to *On* for Calendar or Tasks, the handset vibrates according to the setting specified for the application.**




Note

- **Be careful not to let the vibrating handset get close to fire or fall off a desk, etc.**

Other Settings

Set the handset to emit sound when pressing keys or entering the service area or charging is started/completed.

[Default] Key Tones: On
 Coverage Tone: Off
 Charge Tone: On
 Auto Answer: Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Sound / Mode*
- 2 Highlight a mode, press  (EDIT) and select *Other Settings*
To set key tones
 - ① Select *Key Tones*
 - ② Set *On***To emit sound when entering the service area**
 - ① Select *Coverage Tone*
 - ② Set *On*

To set the charge tone

- ① Select *Charge Tone*
- ② Set *On*

To set the automatic answer

- ① Select *Auto Answer*
- ② Set *On*

3 Press  (OK)

Tip

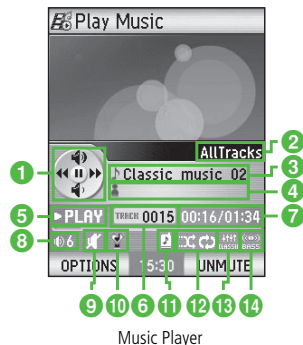
- *Coverage Tone* and *Charge Tone* sound at the volume level set in the active mode. *Key Tones* is always set to *Level 3*.

Entertainment

Music Player

Music Player

Music Player allows you to enjoy sounds that have been preinstalled, downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai or recorded on a PC.



- 1 Multi Selector operations
- 2 Playlist
- 3 Title
- 4 Artist

5 Status

▶ **PLAY** : Played/ || **PAUSE** : Paused/ ■ **STOP** : Stopped/
 ▶▶ **FF** : Fast-forward/ ◀◀ **REW** : Rewind

6 Track No.

7 Elapsed time (min:sec)/Track time (min:sec)

8 Volume

9 Muting



10 Manner mode



11 Priority settings

📄 : Incoming Priority/ 📄 : Music Priority

12 Play Mode

(No display): Play All/ 🔄 : Repeat All/ 🎲 : Random/ 🎲 : Random
 Repeat/ 📄 : Play One/ 🔄 : Repeat

13 Equalizer Settings

(No display): Off/ 🎵 : Classical/ 🎵 : Vocal/ 🎵 : Jazz/ 🎵 : Pop/ 🎵 : Rock

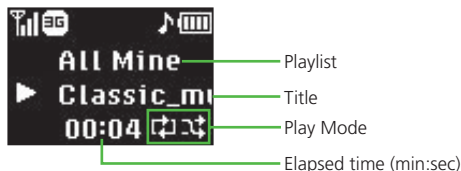
14 Bass Control

(No display): Off/ 🎵 : Level 1 to 🎵 : Level 3

File playback or menu operations are also available from Data Folder. To move/delete files, add subfolders, etc., see Data Folder (☞ p.10-2). To exchange files with a PC, see Connecting to a PC (☞ p.11-6).

External Display

Check the playback status on External Display with the handset closed.



Note

- When *Standby* setting (☞ p.7-3) is set to *On*, the playback status is not displayed on External Display.
- When playing files from Data Folder, it is possible to stop the playback by closing the handset.

Playable files

Type (format)	Extension
AMR	.amr
SMF, SP-MIDI, GM	.mid / .midi
MP3	.mp3
MPEG-4	.mp4 / .3gp / .m4a

Type (format)	Extension
SMAF	.mmf
XMF	.xmf0 / .xmf1
DRM	.dcf

- Files other than the above appear as unsupported files. Files listed above may also be unplayable.
- MP3 files transferred using 705N music transfer tool are supported. Titles and artist names are displayed using MP3 ID tags. Use ID3 tags ver. 2.3/2.4.

Number of files that can be stored

Music files: 250

Melody files: 595



Using copyrighted (DRM) files

If a downloaded sound file is copyrighted, the playback, usage or transfer may be restricted. For information on *Reproducible Period*, *Reproducible Time*, *Reproducible Number*, whether it can be transferred, etc., select *File Properties*. The *Reproducible Time* display is based on the Home Time settings.

Playback



Play sounds on Music Player. Select a playlist from the following:

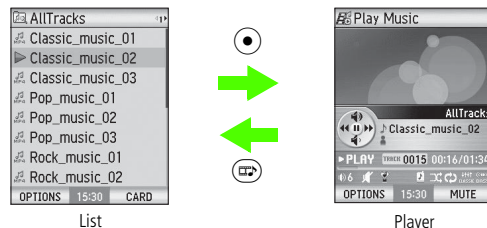
List	Description
AllTracks	Displays all files.
Playlists	Displays playlists containing your favorite files.
MyMusic	Displays a list of folders containing sound files.
Recent.Played	Displays recently-listened files. There is no difference between the handset and the memory card.
Most Played	Displays often-listened files. There is no difference between the handset and the memory card.
Download	Music Search searches for music on websites. Music DL displays websites providing downloadable sound files.
Ringtones	Displays melodies.

- Press  and select  (Entertainment) → **Music Player**
- Select a type of list to play
- If **Playlists** or **MyMusic** is selected, select a folder containing a file to play
- Select a file



9-4

To reselect a file

Press  ( when Ringtone is played) to return to the list window, and select another file



To return from the list window to the player







Press  to return to the list window then press 

Tip

- To select a file stored on the microSD memory card, press  (CARD) after Step 1.

Operations during playback

In the player window, the following operations are available using keys or options:

- /Side key **A**: Turn up the volume
- /Side key **B**: Turn down the volume
- : Play the previous or next track (or find the beginning of the track)
-  for 1+ seconds: Rewind
-  for 1+ seconds: Fast-forward
- /Earphone switch: Pause/Play

● for 1+ seconds: Stop

Earphone switch for 1+ seconds: Stop

☰ (OPTIONS): Display options

⏸ (MUTE/UNMUTE): Mute/Unmute

⏹ (END): Ends the music player

■ Music Player Options

The following options are available on the list or player window. Displayed options may vary depending on the Music Player status.

Option	Description
Set As Ringtone	Set the highlighted or played file as a ringtone.
New Playlist	Create a new playlist.
Delete playlist	Delete the highlighted playlist.
Delete all playlist	Delete all playlists.
Rename Playlist	Rename the highlighted playlist.
Edit Playlist	Edit the playlist.
Send As Message	Send the highlighted or played file attached to a message.
File Properties	Display properties of the highlighted or played file.
Delete	Delete the highlighted file.
Clear List	Remove the highlighted file from the list.
Clear All List	Remove all files from the list.
Edit File Name	Rename the highlighted file.
Add To Playlist	Add the highlighted file to a playlist.

Option	Description
Sort	Sort files in the playlist. Select Artist Name , File Name , etc. under Sort Criteria , and Ascending or Descending under Order . Select Ascending or Descending for playlists in the playlist list.
Mute Settings	Set whether to mute Music Player.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain content keys.
Music settings	Make playback settings.

■ Music settings

Set for playback.

Option	Description
Backlight Settings	Make display lighting settings for playback. Select Handset Settings , Always On or Always Off . Handset Settings follow Backlight Set. under Display Set.
Player Auto Stop	Set the end time of Music Player. Select Off , 30 Minutes Later , 60 Minutes Later or 90 Minutes Later .
Play Mode	Make playback settings in a playlist. Select Play All , Repeat All , Random , Random Repeat , Play One or Repeat .
Equalizer Settings* ¹	Set the sound. Select Off , Classic , Vocal , Jazz , Pop or Rock .





Option	Description
Bass Control	Amplify low sound. Select <i>Off</i> or <i>Level 1</i> to <i>Level 3</i> . Effective only when sound can be heard from the earphone jack/connector.
Priority Settings* ²	Make priority settings for incoming calls or messages. Incoming Priority pauses playback before the incoming window appears. Music Priority continues playback, displays the incoming window and emit a tone for incoming call periodically.
Change Animation	Change animations displayed during playback.

*1 Some files may be played with the noise emphasized by Equalizer settings.





*2 Incoming messages are notified with a fixed pattern if **Vibration** is set to other than *Off*.

.....

■ Creating a Playlist

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Music Player*
- 2 Select *Playlists* and press  (OPTIONS)
- 3 Select *New Playlist*
- 4 Enter a playlist name in *Create New Playlist* and press  (OK)

■ Editing a Playlist

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Music Player*
To select a playlist stored on the microSD memory card
Press  (CARD)
- 2 Select *Playlists*
- 3 Highlight a playlist to edit on the list
- 4 Press  (OPTIONS), select *Edit Playlist*, and edit the playlist
- 5 After editing, press  (SAVE)



■ Edit Playlist

The following options are available for Edit Playlist:

Option	Description
Add To Playlist	Add the highlighted file to a playlist.
Sort	Sort files in the playlist. Select by Size , File Name , Date under Sort Criteria , and Ascending or Descending under Order .
Move File	Change the file order. Highlight a file to move, change the location with MOVE , and confirm with PLACE .
Clear Playlist	Remove the highlighted file from the playlist.
Clear All Playlist	Remove all files from the playlist.
File Properties	Display properties of the highlighted file.

■ Downloading Music

Access website and search for a track to download.

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → **Music Player**
- 2 Select **Download** → **Music Search** or **Music DL** to access website and search for a track
Follow the on-screen instructions

Media Player

■ Media Player

Media Player allows you to enjoy pictures, videos, melodies, etc. stored in Data Folder.

Pictures allows you to enjoy pictures taken with the built-in camera or downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai

Videos allows you to play videos taken with the built-in camera or downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai

Media Settings allows you to set the display size for pictures or videos. File playback or menu operations are also available from Data Folder.


■ Playable files

Content	Type (format)	Extension
Pictures	JPEG	.jpeg .jpg .jpe
	GIF	.gif
	BMP	.bmp
	WBMP	.wbmp
	PNG	.png

Content	Type (format)	Extension
Videos	MPEG-4	.mp4 .3gp
DRM	OMA DRM(S/D)	.dcf

- Files other than the above appear as unsupported files. Files listed above may also be unplayable depending on the copyright, etc.

Using copyrighted files

If a downloaded melody, picture or video is copyrighted, the playback, usage or transfer may be restricted. For information on **Reproducible Period**, **Reproducible Time**, **Reproducible Number**, whether it can be transferred, etc., press  (OPTIONS) and select **File Properties**.

If you do not have the right to use the files, a message appears indicating that the content key is unavailable. Obtain the content Key.

Viewing Pictures


View pictures taken with the handset or downloaded from websites. View files one by one or create a playlist to view files continuously.

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → **Media Player** → **Pictures**

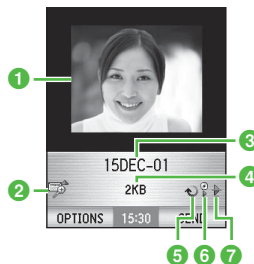
2 Select a file from the list

If folders have been created, select a folder and then select a file from the folder

To temporarily display files in thumbnail

Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Thumbnails** → **Show Thumbnails**

Picture Playback Display



Picture Playback

- Picture*¹
- Full screen display*²



- Title
- File size
- Repeat Setting



- Slide



7 Pause during repeat or slide playback



- *1 When two or more files are stored, use to display the previous or next file.
- *2 Press to switch to the full screen display. Press to return to the normal display. If a file is copyrighted and you do not have the right to use it, the next playable image file appears.

■ Pictures options

The following options are available for Pictures. Displayed options may vary depending on the file types.

Option	Description
Set as Wallpaper	Set the displayed picture as wallpaper.
Visual Effect*	Change the visual effect, lighting condition, or tone of the displayed picture.
Visual Edit*	Edit the displayed picture.
Rename	Rename a file.
Delete	Delete a file.
File Properties	Display file properties.
Playlist	Select files to play.
Take Picture	Launch the camera in Picture mode.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain content keys.

Option	Description
Image Settings	Set the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display Settings Set the display size. • Slide Timing Set the interval at which Slide or playlist are displayed. • Repeat Settings Set whether to display repeatedly. • Slide Set whether to display all the pictures in the folder in order.


* If an animated GIF or the Slide is On, the visual effects and full screen display are not available.

■ Editing Pictures

■ Setting Visual Effect

- 1 Press and select (Entertainment) → *Media Player* → *Pictures*
- 2 Select a file from the list
If folders have been created, select a folder and then select a file from the folder
- 3 Press (OPTIONS) and select *Visual Effect*

4 Select your preferred effect

To view each effect continuously, use  in Preview

5 Press (SAVE)

Tip


- DRM files and Animation files are not available for the visual effects.
- When selecting larger size than VGA, the file is stored in VGA size.

■ Rotating Pictures


1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Media Player* → *Pictures*


2 Select a file from the list

If folders have been created, select a folder and then select a file from the folder

3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Visual Edit* → *Rotate*

4 Use the Navigation key to set the rotation angle

: Rotate 90° clockwise

: Rotate 90° counterclockwise

: Rotate 180°

5 Press  (SAVE)

Tip


- DRM files and Animation files are not available for rotating pictures.
- When selecting larger size than VGA, the file is stored in VGA size.

■ Mirroring Pictures

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Media Player* → *Pictures*

2 Select a file from the list

If folders have been created, select a folder and then select a file from the folder

3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Visual Edit* → *Mirror Image*



4 Press  (SAVE)

■ Cutting Pictures


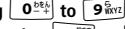

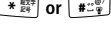

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Media Player* → *Pictures*

2 Select a file from the list

If folders have been created, select a folder and then select a file from the folder

- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Visual Edit* → *Cut*
- 4 Select a size to cut
- 5 Press  (SAVE)

Tip

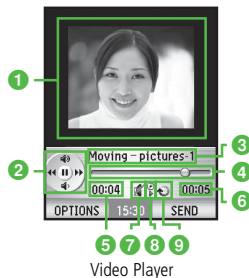
- When selecting a size to cut, the guidance (green frame) appears to indicate the cutting range.
- The Guidance can be moved by using  to change the cutting range.
- The color of guidance can be changed by using  to . The frame of guidance also can be changed by using  or .
- DRM files and Animation files are not available for cutting pictures.
- The cutting range is as follow: smaller than VGA and size of the current file.





Playing Videos

Play videos taken with the handset or downloaded from websites. Play files one by one or create a playlist to play files continuously.

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Media Player* → *Videos*
- 2 Select a file from the list
If folders have been created, select a folder and then select a file from the folder

Video Player Display



- 1 Played video
- 2 Multi Selector operations
- 3 Title (not displayed when streaming)
- 4 Progress bar
- 5 Elapsed time (min:sec)
- 6 Total playing time (min:sec)
- 7 Muting/Manner mode
 
- 8 Play All Videos

- 9 Repeat Setting


■ Operations during playback

The following operations are available during playback:

- /Side key **[V]**: Turn up the volume
- /Side key **[M]**: Turn down the volume
- : Play the previous or next video (or find the beginning of the file)
- for 1+ seconds: Rewind
- for 1+ seconds: Fast-forward
- : Pause/Play
- for 1+ seconds: Stop
- (OPTIONS): Display options
- (SEND): Attach the displayed video to a message

■ Videos options

The following options are available for Videos. Displayed options may vary depending on the file types.

Option	Description
Set As Ringtone	Set the highlighted or played file as a ringtone.
Mute Settings	Set whether to mute Media Player.
Rename	Rename a file.
Delete	Delete a file.
File Properties	Display file properties.
Playlist	Select files to play.
Take Video	Launch the camera in Video mode.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain Contents Key.

Option	Description
Video Settings	Set the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repeat Settings Set whether to display repeatedly. • Play All Videos Play all videos in the folder in order.

■ Creating a Playlist







Create a playlist to play multiple pictures and videos in your preferred order.

- 1 Press and select (Entertainment) → **Media Player** → **Pictures or Videos**
- 2 Select some pictures or videos
- 3 Press (OPTIONS) and select **Playlist**
- 4 Press (OPTIONS) and select **Add New Playlist**
- 5 Enter a playlist name and press (OK)


☞ Tip ☞

- To save a playlist on the microSD memory card, (OPTIONS) → select **Switch Memory** → **Memory Card** before saving the playlist.

■ Adding Files to a Playlist

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *Media Player* → *Pictures* or *Videos*
- 2 Select some pictures or videos
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Playlist*
- 4 Highlight a playlist to add on the list
- 5 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit Playlist*
- 6 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Add File*, or press  (ADD)
- 7 Select files to add

☾ Tip ☽

- To edit a playlist stored on the microSD memory card,  (OPTIONS) → select *Switch Memory* → *Memory Card* before editing the playlist.



■ Playlist options

The following options are available for Playlist:

Option	Description
Add New Playlist	Create a playlist.
Edit Play List	Edit the selected playlist.
Switch Memory	Switch the destination (handset or memory card) to be saved.
Edit Playlist Name	Rename the selected playlist.
Delete	Delete the selected playlist.
Delete All	Delete all playlists.

■ Edit playlist options

The following options are available for Edit Playlist:

Option	Description
Add File	Add the file to a playlist.
File Properties	Display properties of the selected file.
Sort	Sort files in the playlist. Select <i>By Name</i> ↑ , <i>By Name</i> ↓ , <i>By Date</i> ↑ , <i>By Date</i> ↓ , <i>By Size</i> ↑ or <i>By Size</i> ↓ .
Move File	Change the file order. Select a file to move, change the location with  (SELECT), and confirm with  (PLACE).
Clear Playlist	Remove the selected file from the playlist.
Clear All Playlist	Remove all files from the playlist.

■ Playlist playback options



The following options are available for playlist playback:

Option	Description
Playlist	Select files to play.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain content keys.
Image Settings	Set the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Display Settings Set the display size. · Slide Timing Set the interval at which Slide or playlist are displayed. · Repeat Settings Set whether to display repeatedly. · Slide Set whether to display all the pictures in the folder in order.

■ Setting Media Player

Set the display size for pictures and videos under **Media Settings**

[Default] ■ ImageDisp. Size: Default Size
 ■ VID Disp. Size: Default Size

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → **Media Player** → **Media Settings** → **ImageDisp. Size** or **VID Disp.Size**
- 2 Select **Fit to Screen** or **Default Size**

S! Cast

■ S! Cast

Subscribe to information and receive automatic updates. Information updates are delivered during the night.

- Separate registration is required to use the S! Cast service.
- The S! Cast service is unavailable outside Japan.

■ Subscribing/Unsubscribing

Access the site and subscribe to/unsubscribe from information or select a program.

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *CAST* → *Casting Set*.

2 Follow on-screen instructions

Tip

- Connection fees apply while you are connected to the Web.

■ Viewing Information Updates

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *CAST* → *What's New?*

2 Select information

Tip




- If there is unread information
Notify you with a desktop icon. Select an icon to check the information.

Note

- Information may not be delivered e.g. if the handset is turned off or out of service area.

■ Downloading information manually

Manually download information if the handset is turned off or out of service area during delivery time. Only the latest information on the delivery day can be downloaded.

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *CAST* → *Manual DL*
- 2 Press  (YES)

Tip

- If the download of S!Cast information has missed, select *Manual DL* to download it again. If you select *Manual DL* with the latest information downloaded, *受付は完了しました* is displayed in the window. However, the information is not downloaded.

■ Checking Past Content

Up to six back numbers can be stored. If the seventh back number is to be saved, the oldest one is deleted.

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *CAST* → *History*

2 Select a date

Tip

- The following icons indicate the read/unread status of the information.

 : Unread

 : Read

Information options

The following options are available on the information display window:

Option	Description
Forward	Go on to the next page.
Create Phone Book	Register a phone number or mail address to Phone Book.
Action	Search for or copy words. Save or play images or pictures.
Send As Message	Attach the displayed file to a message.
Page Setting	Change the encoding, font size or scroll settings.
Settings	Set the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Images Select <i>Display</i> or <i>Do Not Display</i>. · Sounds Select <i>Play</i> or <i>Do Not Play</i>. · Reset Reset the settings to default.

Setting Weather Icon

The weather icons can be displayed on the weather cast browser or standby window. The icons can be updated automatically or manually.

- Separate registration is required to use the S! Cast service (see p.9-14).
- The S! Cast service is unavailable outside Japan.

Displaying Weather Information

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *CAST* → *Weather Icon* → *Weather*

Displaying Weather Icon

Set whether to display Weather Icon in Standby. When set to On, the icons are automatically updated.

[Default] Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → *CAST* → *Weather Icon* → *Display Set*.
- 2 Select *On* or *Off* and press .

Weather Icon list

Group	Weather Icon			
Weather	Fair (daytime)		Fair (nighttime)	
	Cloudy		Rainy	
	Snowy		Thunderstorm	
	then		at times	
Pollen reports	Low		High	
	Very high		Extreme	
Cherry blossom	Early		Near peak	
	Peak		Past peak	
Autumn foliage	Early		Near peak	
	Peak		Past peak	
Rainfall probability	0%		10%	
	20%		30%	
	40%		50%	
	60%		70%	
	80%		90%	
	100%			
Typhoon	Birth		Approaching	
	Warning			
UV forecast	Low		High	
	Very high		Extreme	
Warnings/Advisories	Snowfall		Snow forecast	
	Heavy rain		Thunderstorm & lightning	
	Storm (Gale)		High waves	
	Dense fog			

Group	Weather Icon			
Topics	Rainy season		End of rainy season	
	Spring-heralding gale		Any	
	Special icon			

Manually Updating Weather Icon

- Press and select (Entertainment) → CAST → Weather Icon → Manual Update

Tip

- To manually update Weather Icon, set *Display Set.* to ON.

Displaying Information on Weather Icon

Set whether to display desktop icon when receiving the latest information.

[Default] Off

- Press and select (Entertainment) → CAST → Weather Icon → Missed Event
- Select *On* or *Off* and press

Tip**• When receiving the latest information**

Select a desktop icon to check the information.

S! Loop

S! Loop is a communication service.

■ Selecting Service

1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) →

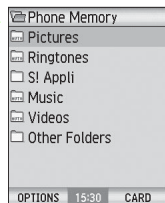
S! Loop

When connecting to a website, the top menu window appears. For the information of procedures, see Help on the S! Loop website.

Data Management

Data Folder

Use Data Folder to store and manage files. Use preinstalled folders or user-created subfolders to organize data.



Data Folder List

Data Folder Tree

Data Folder contains *Pictures*, *Ringtones*, *S! Appli*, *Music*, *Videos* and *Other Folders*. *Other Folders* contains *Voice Rec.* and *More Folder*. Subfolders can be created under folders other than *S! Appli* and *Other Folders*. Data is automatically saved to specified folders depending on the file formats.



Tip

- **Folders on the memory card**

The memory card uses the same folder tree as on the handset.

- **Number of files**

One folder can contain up to 100 files including files stored in subfolders. Each folder can contain up to five subfolders. The *Music* folder can contain up to 100 subfolders.

- **Download folder**

Select *Download* in each Data Folder, to directly access the list of the related websites.

Folder and File Format


The following formats are available for the folders:

- **Pictures**
BMP, WBMP, JPEG, JFIF, GIF, PNG
- **Ringtones**
MIDI, SMAF, XMF
- **S! Appli**
JAVA (JAD, JAR)
- **Music**
MP3, MP4, AAC, AMR
- **Videos**
MPEG4
- **Other Folders**
vCalendar, vCard, vNote
- **Voice Rec.**
AMR
- **More Folder**
Text and unsupported files

■ microSD memory card

The microSD memory card is available as the data location. Pictures or videos taken with the handset camera can be saved directly to the microSD memory card. Data can be exchanged (copied/moved) between the handset and the microSD memory card. Data Folder can display data stored on the microSD memory card.

■ Data Folder options






Highlight a folder and press  (OPTIONS).

Option	Description
Switch Memory	Switch between <i>Phone Memory</i> and <i>Memory Card</i> .
Memory Status	View used and free memory for <i>Phone Memory</i> and <i>Memory Card</i> .
Delete	Delete data in the folder.
Auto Save	Save data automatically to the folder.
Shortcut	Create a shortcut to the folder on the desktop or on My Menu.

■ Saving automatically

If *Auto Save* is applied to the folders on the handset or memory card, data can be automatically saved to the folders. *Auto Save* is available for *Pictures*,

Ringtones, *Music* and *Videos*.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 To set a folder in *Phone Memory*, press  (PHONE), to set a folder in *Memory Card*, press  (CARD)
- 3 Highlight a folder and select  (OPTIONS) → *Auto Save*

* *AUTO* appears on the icons for Auto Save folders.

* Even if files are set to be automatically saved to a folder on the memory card, files are saved to the corresponding folder on the handset in the following cases.

- The memory card is used as USB memory

- Data cannot be directly saved into the memory card
- The memory card is not inserted

Viewing Stored Files


■ Opening Files

1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)

2 Select a folder or subfolder




3 Highlight a file from the list and press 

To temporarily display files in thumbnail


Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Thumbnails* → *Show Thumbnails*

☾ Tip ☽

• To check data on the microSD memory card

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder) and press  (CARD)
- 2 Select a folder or a subfolder to check
- 3 Highlight a file on the list and press 


■ File list options

Highlight a file on the file list in Data Folder (except for S! Appli list) and press  (OPTIONS), and the following operations are available.

Displayed options may vary depending on the situation.


Option	Description
Send As Message	Create a new mail with the highlighted file attached.
New Folder	Create a new folder.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain content keys.
Rename	Rename the highlighted file.
Copy	Copy the highlighted file.
Move	Move the highlighted file to another folder or memory card.
Delete	Delete the highlighted file.
File properties	Display properties of the highlighted file.
Switch Memory	Switch the memory between Phone Memory and Memory Card .
Sort Files	Sort the files in the list.
Thumbnails	Switch the display of files in thumbnail.
Memory Status	Check used and free memory of Phone Memory and Memory Card .
Auto Save	Save data automatically to the folder.
Shortcut	Create a shortcut to the note on the desktop or on My Menu.

■ Picture window options


Press  (OPTIONS) while displaying a picture, and the following operations are available.

Option	Description
Set as Wallpaper	Set the image currently displayed as the Wallpaper.
File Properties	Display the property of the file currently displayed.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain content keys.
Image Settings	Set the display size of the window.

■ Ringtone or music playback options

For details on the option displayed while playing the ringtone or music, see "Entertainment" ( p.9-5).

■ Video playback options

Press  (OPTIONS) while playing a video, and the following operations are available.

Option	Description
Set As Ringtone	Set the file currently played as the ringtone.
Mute Settings	Set whether to set to mute.
File Properties	Display the property of the file currently played.
Obtain Content Key	Launch browser to obtain content keys.

Using vfiles

■ vfiles

vfiles is a generic term for files that can be used between the handset and another SoftBank handset or PC. Manage the handset Phone Book or Calendar. Copy data created on another SoftBank handset or PC to your handset.

The following handset features correspond to the vfiles:

Format	Corresponding feature
vCard	Phone Book
vCalendar	Calendar, Tasks
vNote	Notepad

■ Using the Handset Data on Another Device

Data such as Phone Book or Calendar saved to Data Folder are automatically converted to vfiles. The created vfiles can be attached to a message and sent to another SoftBank handset or PC.

If the microSD memory card is inserted into the handset, created vfiles can be saved to the microSD memory card. Insert this microSD memory card into another microSD memory card-compatible SoftBank handset or PC to use the vfiles.

■ Using Acquired Data

vfiles acquired via messages or websites can be saved to Data Folder and used for each feature.

In addition, if inserting the microSD memory card containing vfiles into the handset, acquire the files for each feature from the microSD memory card.

◀ Note ▶

- To use vfiles on a PC, etc., a vfiles-compatible application is required. Data may not be acquired to the handset or usable on a PC depending on the contents.
- The microSD memory card formatted on the handset or the stored vfiles may be unreadable depending on the drive type of the PC or microSD memory card.

■ Creating (Saving) vfiles


Created vfiles are saved to **Other Folders** under Data Folder. To open data, see the pages for the features.

- 1 Open data to be saved
- 2 Save the data


For Phone Book

Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Send Phone Book** → **Send vCard**

For Calendar, Tasks

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Synchronisation* → *Save vCalendar*

For Notepad

Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Synchronisation* → *Save vNote*

Note

- vfiles cannot be created for Bookmarks.


Acquiring vfiles for Each Feature

Acquire vfiles for each feature.

1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)

2 Select *Other Folders*

To select a file stored on the microSD memory card

Press  (CARD)

3 Select a vfile to acquire

4 Press  (OK)




For Notepad

Press  (SAVE)

Managing Folders




Creating Folders

Create subfolders under *Pictures*, *Ringtones*, *Music* or *Videos*.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *New Folder*
- 4 Enter a folder name





Renaming Folders

Rename user-created folders.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Select a folder and highlight a user-created subfolder
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Rename*
- 4 Enter a new name

■ Deleting Folders

Delete user-created folders.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Select a folder and highlight a subfolder
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*
- 4 Press  (YES)




Tip

- **If the root folder is selected**
The folder itself cannot be deleted. However, all files and user-created subfolders in the folder will be deleted.

Managing Files

■ Renaming Files






Rename the file in the list.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Select a file location and highlight a file
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Rename*


4 Enter a new name

■ Copying/Moving Files

Files can be exchanged between the handset and the memory card. Two or more files can be copied/moved at a time. However, they cannot be copied/moved to a different category folder.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Highlight one or more files to copy/move in Data Folder ( p.1-26)
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Copy* or *Move*
- 4 Press  (OK)
- 5 Select a destination folder to copy/move the file

Tip






- When selecting a file or folder in microSD memory card, use  (PHONE/CARD) to switch the memory between handset memory and microSD memory card.
- **To move files being used to microSD memory card**
Files used in display settings or ringtone cannot be moved. Cancel the setting before moving.
- **If a file cannot be transferred but to peripherals**
The file is encrypted before being moved.
Some files may be unplayable.

- If a file cannot be transferred also to peripherals

The file cannot be moved to the memory card.

■ Deleting Files


Delete files. A file being used as a ringtone or wallpaper cannot be deleted.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Highlight one or more files to delete ( p.1-26)
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*
- 4 Press  (YES)

Before Using the Memory Card

The microSD memory card is available as external storage. Pictures or videos taken with the handset camera can be saved to the handset or microSD memory card. Various data can be exchanged (copied/moved) between the handset and the microSD memory card.

- A microSD memory card does not come with the handset. Purchase a commercially available microSD memory card.
- For details on the microSD memory card, see the User Guide that comes with the purchased microSD memory card.

- When using the microSD memory card containing some data for the first time, back up important data to a PC, etc. before formatting ( p.10-11).

■ Using the microSD Memory Card

Note the following:

- The data you save to the microSD memory card may be lost or altered due to accidents or malfunctions. Keep a backup of data stored on the microSD memory card. SoftBank shall not be liable for any loss or alteration of data.
- Do not insert or remove the microSD memory card with the handset turned on.
- Insert the microSD memory card properly. An improperly inserted card is unusable.
- Do not put labels on the microSD memory card. The thickness of labels may cause read/write errors or data corruption.
- Keep the microSD memory card away from small children. They may swallow it, or the card may cause bodily injury.
- Use the dedicated microSD memory card. Non-dedicated microSD memory cards may be unusable or may not function properly.
- While accessing the microSD memory card, do not turn the handset off or remove the battery pack. Doing so may cause data loss, or the microSD memory card may become unusable.

- If the battery level is low, the microSD memory card may be unusable.

Tip

Supported microSD memory card

Up to 1G-byte microSD memory cards are supported. Purchase a microSD memory card and its adapter at an electronics store, etc.

To use the microSD memory card on a PC, etc.

Insert the microSD memory card into a commercially available microSD memory card adapter to use the card on a compatible PC, etc.

Connect the handset to a PC via a USB cable to read/write data on the microSD memory card from the PC (p.11-6).

A USB driver is required to connect to a PC. Install the driver in the bundled CD-ROM onto the PC.

Note

- **Do not use "." (dot) for a folder name when creating a folder in the microSD memory card. A folder with "." (a file in the folder also cannot be recognized) cannot be recognized and used in the handset.**

Example:

"abc.def" ... × cannot be used because of "." (dot)

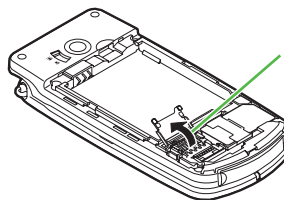
"abc_def" ... ○ can be used because of "_" (underbar)

Installing/Removing the microSD Memory Card

Installing

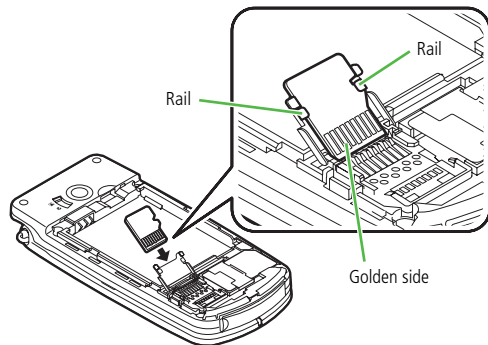
Insert the card with the handset turned off.

Slide the metal cover and lift it off





When sliding is not smooth, slide pressing the cover down.

2 Facing the golden side, gently insert the microSD memory card along the rails



3 Close the metal cover and slide it back until it locks into place

Tip

- When inserting the microSD memory card  appears. If the microSD memory card is malfunctioning or was not be properly formatted,  appears. Format or check the disk.

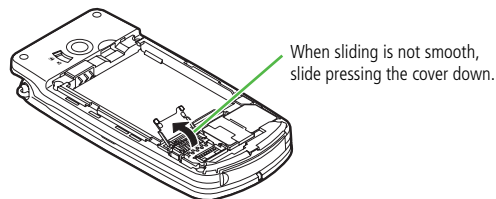
Note

- Do not apply excessive force, which may damage the card holder or microSD memory card.
- If the cover is not properly closed in Step 3, lift the cover up, and check that the card is properly grooved into the rails and inserted deep.

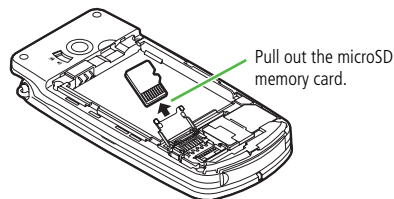
Removing

Remove the card with the handset turned off.

1 Slide the metal cover and lift it up



2 Gently pull out the microSD memory card







- 3 Close the metal cover and slide it back until it locks into place

Using the Memory Card

■ Formatting (Initializing) the microSD Memory Card

To use the microSD memory card, format it on the handset. Note that formatting will erase all data.

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Memory Set.* → *Memory Card*
- 2 Select *Format*
- 3 Enter Security Code and press  (OK)
- 4 Press  (YES)




Note

- Charge the battery fully before formatting.
- Do not remove the microSD memory card or battery pack during formatting. Doing so may damage the microSD memory card or handset.

- An incoming call or message does not interrupt the formatting process.
- The format will delete the related content keys. Note that when another user's microSD memory card containing the same contents is formatted, the content key is also deleted.

■ Checking the microSD memory card

If the handset is powered off while using the microSD memory card, the data may be corrupted. The Check Disk function may restore the data.

- ① Press  and select  (Settings) → *Memory Set.* → *Memory Card*
- ② Select *Check Disk* and press  (YES)

If the Check Disk could not restore the data e.g. because folders or data created on the handset were deleted on a PC, etc., reformat the microSD memory card. Back up important data stored on the card to a PC, etc. before formatting.

■ Checking Data on the microSD Memory Card



■ Files That Can Be Stored on the microSD Memory Card

The following two types of data can be stored on the microSD memory card:

Data	Description
Pictures, videos, melodies, S! Appli, vfile (Data stored in the Other Folders folder)	Can be copied or moved between the handset and the microSD memory card (S! Appli can only be moved).
Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks	Copy the Phone Book, calendar and tasks data in vfile format between the handset and the microSD memory card. The data can be copied from the microSD card to the handset one by one.




■ Checking the memory status

Check the used and free memory.

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → **Memory Set**.
- 2 Select **Status**

■ Checking from Data Folder

Launch Data Folder to check data stored on the microSD memory card.

- 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Press  (CARD)

☾ Tip ☽

- **Data Folder**
Data Folder is divided into **Pictures**, **Ringtones**, **S! Appli**, **Music**, **Videos** and **Other Folders**.

■ Checking from Music Player

Launch Music Player to check data stored on the microSD memory card.


- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → **Music Player** → **AllTracks**
- 2 Press  (CARD)

■ Checking from Media Player

Launch Media Player to check data stored on the microSD memory card.

- 1 Press  and select  (Entertainment) → **Media Player** → **Pictures or Videos**
- 2 Press  (CARD)

Transferring Data

Data can be exchanged between the handset and the microSD memory card ( p.10-7).

External Connection

Bluetooth

Bluetooth

Bluetooth refers to a worldwide standard for the wireless exchange of data between two compatible devices.

Use Bluetooth to:

- Establish a dial-up connection
Establish a dial-up connection with a PC using the handset as a modem.
- Transfer data
Transfer a Phone Book data to another Bluetooth-compatible device (PC, PDA, 705N handset, etc.). Only one entry can be transferred.
- Make a call with a headset or in handsfree mode
Connect the handset to a Bluetooth-compatible device and make a call.

Bluetooth Specifications

Communication	Bluetooth standard Ver1.2
Compatible Bluetooth profile* ¹	Headset Profile, Hands-Free Profile, Dial-up Networking Profile, Object Push Profile
Output	Bluetooth Power Class2

Communication	Bluetooth standard Ver1.2
Expected communication distance* ²	Max. 10m
Frequency	2.4GHz


*1 The device must be compatible with the same profile.



*2 The distance may vary depending on obstacles between the device and the handset, reception, device specifications, etc.

Note

- **A connection to a Bluetooth-compatible device is not always guaranteed.**
- **Use approved Bluetooth devices that comply with Telecommunications Business Law.**
- **Use certified Bluetooth devices that comply with the Bluetooth standards provided by the Bluetooth SIG. A connection or data transfer may be unavailable depending on the device specifications. Procedures may differ between devices.**
- **The handset cannot be connected to two or more devices simultaneously.**
- **For information on how to use a Bluetooth device, see the User's Guide.**
- **The 2.4GHz frequency band is used by many devices. Although the employed technology minimizes the effects of devices using the same frequency, the effects may slow down the speed, shorten the effective distance, or even disconnect the communication.**


■ Activating Bluetooth

When receiving Phone Book data or connecting to a Bluetooth device in the vicinity, activate Bluetooth to enable connection. While in Bluetooth standby mode,  appears in the window.

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Select *Discoverable*



◀ Tip ▶

- A connection cannot be established until the Bluetooth function is activated.
- The timeout time can be set in *Standby Timer* under *Timeout Settings*. If a connection is not established within the specified time, the connection standby mode is canceled, and  disappears from the window.

■ Pairing

Search for a Bluetooth device and register it. Register a headset or handsfree device beforehand. Up to 20 devices can be registered.

■ Pairing

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Press  (SEARCH)

3 Select a device from the search result




4 Enter the Device Passkey

5 Enter the same Device Passkey on the pairing device


◀ Tip ▶

- The common Device Passkey (authentication code) must be entered on both sending and receiving devices. Set a 16-digit-or-less number as the Device Passkey. The available digits may vary depending on the devices.
- If the Device Passkey has been set on the device to register, enter it.
- If connecting to a registered device, the Device Passkey is not required.
- For information on setting the device to standby, see the device's user guide.

■ Connecting from a Device to the Handset

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Pairing Standby*
- 3 Request a connection from the device

☰ Tip ☰

- The timeout time can be set in *Pairing Timer* under *Timeout Settings*. If a connection is not established within the specified time, the pairing standby mode is canceled, and  disappears from the window.
- When pairing, the Device Passkey may be required to be entered.


■ Using Bluetooth to Transfer Data

Use Bluetooth to transfer vCard-formatted Phone Book data.

Some devices must be registered before data is sent. However, registration may not be required depending on the other party's device such as 705N.

■ Sending Data




- 1 Set the receiving device to standby

- 2 Highlight Phone Book data to send, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Send Phone Book* → *Send vCard Via B.T.*
- 3 Select the receiving device from the device list
Data is sent.

☰ Tip ☰

- Data that can be sent
Only one Phone Book entry can be sent. To send another entry, repeat sending.
- The Device Passkey may be required to be entered even if the device is already registered.
- The device list displayed in Step 3 shows the latest information on devices regardless of the registration.

■ Receiving Data

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*
- 2 Select *Discoverable* to set the handset to standby
- 3 Start the transfer operation on the sending device
- 4 After receiving the data, press  (YES) to save the data to the Phone Book



Tip

- When saving Phone Book data, the Device Passkey may be required to be entered.
- For information on how to send data from a device, see the User Guide.


Using Bluetooth to Connect a Device

Use Bluetooth to connect a device to the handset.

Connecting to a device


1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Select a device from the device list

The device is connected and  appears on the right side of the selected device.

If there are no registered devices (you use Bluetooth for the first time)



Register the device to connect in advance with the following steps:

- 1 Press  (SEARCH)
- 2 Select a device from the search results

Tip

- The Device Passkey may be required to be entered.

Disconnecting a Device



1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Select the connected device from the device list


3 Press  (YES)

Using Bluetooth for Dial-up Connection

Use Bluetooth and a PC to access the Internet.

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*

2 Select *Discoverable*

3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Pairing Standby*

4 Enter the Device Passkey when the connection is requested from the device

5 After authentication is completed, the device is registered

6 Press to exit the Bluetooth window

Tip

- For information on the modem settings or operations of a Bluetooth device, see the User Guide.

Bluetooth options

The following options are available for Bluetooth. Displayed options may vary depending on the registration status.


Option	Description
Information	Display information on the registered device.
Search	Search for Bluetooth-compatible devices in the vicinity.
Pairing Standby	Set the handset to pairing standby.
Terminal Info.	Display Bluetooth information on the handset.
Remove Device	Delete devices from the list.
Stop All	Disconnect all Bluetooth devices.
Timeout Settings	Set the timeout time. Not to time out and keep the connection standby mode, set 0 in Standby Timer. The default is as follows: Standby Timer: 0 (min.) Pairing Timer: 3 (min.)

- A device name can be edited if the connection standby mode is set to OFF and the handset is not connected to other device.

Indicators




Bluetooth inactive: 

Bluetooth activated (connection standby): 

Bluetooth connected: 


Connecting to a PC

Connecting the handset to a PC via a USB cable allows the following functions:

Function	Description
Data communication*	Use the handset as an external modem to establish a packet data communication ( p.11-7).
Data transfer*	Exchange data, e.g. back up the handset Phone Book to a PC, transfer music files stored on a PC to the handset ( p.11-8).
USB memory*	Use the handset as an external drive with the microSD memory card inserted, and read/write files on the microSD memory card ( p.11-8).


* Use the bundled ユーティリティソフトウェア (Utilities) CD-ROM to install the USB driver beforehand.

Note

- While connecting the handset and PC to a USB cable, the PC battery runs down even if data communication or transfer is not made ( p.11-7).

Bundled Utilities CD-ROM

Utilities

- USB driver
- 705N data transfer tool ( p.11-8)

- 705N music transfer tool (📖 p.11-8)

Tip

- For the latest utility software, visit the NEC Mobile Communications website "NEC mobile" at <http://www.n-keitai.com/>.

PC Operating Environment

Item	Description
PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PC/AT compatible with CD-ROM drive • One or more USB ports
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 2000/XP (Japanese editions)
Memory	Environment that the used OS recommends or higher
HDD	30MB of available hard-disk space* *It may vary depending on the PC that uses it.
Other	Display: Resolution 800 x 600 or higher, High Color or above recommended

How to Install Utilities

The USB driver is required to connect the handset to a PC. Install this utility first. To install the USB driver, log on as a user with administrator permissions.

1 Place the ユーティリティーソフトウェア (Utilities) CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive

The menu automatically launches.

If the menu does not appear, double-click "start.exe" in the CD-ROM.

The instructions are given only in Japanese.

2 Select utilities

Follow on-screen instructions.

Note

- Do not connect the handset to a PC before installing a USB driver.

Tip

- To uninstall the USB driver
Select *USB ドライバーのインストール/アンインストール* (Install/Uninstall USB Driver) from the *ユーティリティーソフトウェア* (Utilities) CD-ROM menu, and follow the instructions.

Data Communication

Use the handset as an external modem to establish a packet data communication.

- To establish a data communication, connect the handset to a PC via a USB cable. Bluetooth connection is also available (📖 p.11-2).
- For information on establishing communication, see your provider's or PC's user guide.

- Use **アクセスインターネット**(Access Internet) for Internet access without a provider subscription. Contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43) for access points, settings, services, etc.

Tip

- **Before starting a data communication, exit all handset applications.**
- * Data can be exchanged during a voice call.

Transferring Data

705N Data Transfer Tool

This tool allows you to back up the handset data such as Phone Book or Schedule (excluding non-transferable files) to a PC, or to edit the data on the PC and save it back to the handset.

For information on how to install the tool, see the **ユーティリティーソフトウェア**(Utilities) CD-ROM menu.

705N Music Transfer Tool

This tool allows you to transfer music files stored on a PC to the handset. It is useful when you edit a playlist and use the handset Music Player.

For information on how to install the tool, see the **ユーティリティーソフトウェア**(Utilities) CD-ROM menu.


Tip

- **MP3 or AAC files transferred to the handset become non-transferable.**

Reading/Writing Files on the microSD Memory Card

When the handset is connected to a PC via a USB cable with **USB Mode** set to **Visible From PC**, the PC recognizes the handset as USB memory, and enables files stored on the microSD memory card to be directly read or modified.

Tip

- **When connected to a PC in USB Mode**
 appears at the top of the window.
- **While reading/writing files on a PC**
 The microSD memory card is unusable on the handset. While using the microSD memory card on the handset, files cannot be read/written on a PC.
- **To switch between Visible From PC and Invisible From PC under USB Mode**

[Default] Visible From PC

- ① Press  and select  (Settings) → **Memory Set.** → **Memory Card** → **USB Mode**
- ② Select **Visible From PC** or **Invisible From PC**

- **To remove a USB cable**

Follow the windows safe removal procedure. While reading/writing files, do not remove the USB cable.

Note

- **Do not change the folder tree on the microSD memory card. If you change/delete folders (e.g. Private) and its files created on the handset, they may become invisible from the handset.**

Handset Security

Changing Security Code





[Default] ■ 9999

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Set Sec. Codes*
- 2 Enter the current Security Code
- 3 Press  (OK)
- 4 Select *Chg. Handset Code*
- 5 Enter the current Security Code
- 6 Press  (OK)
- 7 Enter a new four-digit Security Code
- 8 Enter the new Security Code again
- 9 Press  (OK)

Setting PIN Code

Changing PIN Code

Change PIN1 and PIN2 (secret codes for USIM Card) for your security.






- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Set Sec. Codes*
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select *Change PIN1* or *Change PIN2* and enter the current PIN1 or PIN2
- 4 Enter a new four to eight digit PIN1 or PIN2
- 5 Enter the new PIN1 or PIN2 again
- 6 Press  (OK) or 

Tip

- Before changing PIN1, set *Activate PIN1* to *Enable*.

Enabling PIN1 Authentication

This setting prevents unauthorized use of the USIM Card. Set *Enable* to require PIN1 entry, each time the handset is turned on.


- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Set Sec. Codes*
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Press  (OK)
- 4 Select *Activate PIN1*
- 5 Select *Enable*
- 6 Enter PIN1
- 7 Press  (OK) or 



Note

- If PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, the current PIN1 becomes invalid.






■ Canceling PIN Lock

If PIN1 or PIN2 is entered incorrectly three times consecutively, the current PIN1 or PIN2 becomes invalid. This is called PIN lock. To cancel PIN lock, enter a PUK code.

To obtain PUK1 or PUK2 code to cancel PIN1 or PIN2 lock, contact Customer Service ( p.19-43). Then use the following procedures to cancel PIN lock:

- 1 Enter PUK1 or PUK2 code on the PUK code entry window
- 2 Enter a new PIN1 or PIN2 code
- 3 Enter the new PIN1 or PIN2 code again
- 4 Press  (OK) or 

The following procedures are also available for canceling PIN2 lock:

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Set Sec. Codes*
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Press  (OK)
- 4 Select *Unblock PIN2*
- 5 Enter PUK2 code on the PUK2 code entry window
- 6 Enter a new PIN2
- 7 Enter the new PIN2 again
- 8 Press  (OK) or 

Note

- If PUK1 code is entered incorrectly ten times consecutively, the USIM Card is locked. Once the USIM Card is locked, all operations are blocked.
- If PUK2 code is entered incorrectly ten times consecutively, no operations requiring PIN2 can be performed.
- To unlock the USIM Card, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).




Preventing Unauthorized Handset Use

Setting Locks

Setting Dial Lock

Set *Dial Lock* to disable operations except emergency calls, incoming calls and turning on/off the handset.

[Default] Off





- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Dial Locks*
- 2 Set *Dial Lock* to *On*
- 3 Press  (OK)

12-4


4 Enter Security Code

5 Press (OK)

Tip

- To set *Dial Lock* in Standby
 - 1 Press  for 1+ seconds
 - 2 Enter Security Code
 - 3 Press  (OK)
- Keys available while in *Dial Lock*
 -  to answer calls and  to reject calls or turn on/off the handset
- If the handset is turned off while in *Dial Lock*, the lock is not released.

Releasing Dial Lock

- 1 Enter Security Code in Standby
- 2 Press  (OK)


Setting Start Up Dial Lock

Set *Start Up Dial Lock* to set *Dial Lock* automatically when the handset is turned on.


[Default] Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Dial Locks*

2 Set *Start Up Dial Lock* to *On*

3 Press  (OK)


4 Enter **Security Code**

5 Press  (OK)


■ Releasing Start Up Dial Lock

1 Press  and select  (**Settings**) → *Security* → *Dial Locks*

2 Set *Start Up Dial Lock* to *Off*

3 Press  (OK)

4 Enter **Security Code**


5 Press  (OK)

Tip

- To temporarily cancel Start Up Dial Lock
Enter Security Code in Standby.

Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls

Use various functions to restrict incoming and outgoing calls. When outgoing calls are restricted, only calls to the permitted phone numbers can be made. When incoming calls are restricted, unauthorized calls are rejected and the callers hear busy tone. Unauthorized calls are logged as missed call.

In addition to the options explained in this section, Call Barring service is available for restricting calls to overseas phone numbers or barring all incoming or outgoing calls ( p.15-9).

■ Restricting Outgoing Calls (Fixed Dialing)



Set *Fixed Dialling* to enable only calls to specified numbers (Fixed Dialling Number).

1 Press  and select  (**Settings**) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Fixed Dialling*

2 Select *On*

Tip

- **To register Fixed Dialing**

Press  and select  (Phone Book) → *Other Numbers* → *Fixed (FDN)* (see p.4-4).

* As of December 2006, the Fixed Dialing function is not available.

Rejecting Calls from Unknown Phone Numbers (Unknown)

Set *Unknown* to reject calls from phone numbers not stored in the handset or USIM Phone Book.

[Default] Accept

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Unknown*

2 Select *Reject*

Note

- This function is invalid for calls without the caller ID.

Rejecting Calls without Caller ID (Ignore If No ID)

Set *Ignore If NoID* to reject calls without caller ID (including calls from public phones or overseas). Use this setting to prevent you from receiving prank calls, etc.

[Default] Off

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Ignore If NoID*

2 Select *On*



Saving Secret Entries/Events

Save Phone Book entries or Calendar events you want to hide as secret data. To view secret data, enter Private PIN for Phone Book entries or Security Code for Calendar events.

Saving Secret Entries/Events

[Default] Off


■ Saving Secret Entries


- 1 On the Phone Book list, highlight an entry to save as secret data, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit Phone Book*
- 2 Select *Other Settings*
- 3 Select *On* in *Private*
- 4 Press  (OK)


Tip


- If an entry is saved as secret data, only the phone number appears on the dialing, incoming call or call log window.


■ Saving Secret Events

- 1 Press  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calendar*
- 2 Select the date with a registered schedule or event to save as secret data
- 3 Select the schedule or event to save as secret data

- 4 Press  (EDIT) and select *Private* in *Filter View*

To save secret data from  (Options)

- ① Press  (Options) and select *Edit*
- ② Select *Private* in *Filter View*

- 5 Press  (OK)



Tip

- To save schedules or events as secret data when registering
Select *Private* in *Filter View* on each registration window (see p.13-3, p.13-7)

■ Displaying/Hiding Secret Data

[Default] Off




■ Displaying/Hiding Secret Entries

- 1 Press  (Phone Book) → *Settings* → *PrivacyDisplay*
- 2 Select *On* or *Off*
- 3 Enter Security Code
- 4 Press  (OK)


Tip

- When *PrivacyDisplay* is set to *On*
Names stored in Phone Book appear on the Phone Book or message windows.
- When the handset is turned off with *PrivacyDisplay* set to *On*
PrivacyDisplay is reset to *Off*.

■ Displaying/Hiding Secret Events

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calendar*
- 2 Press  (Options) and select *Filter View*
- 3 Select an item

To show secret events

- ① Select *All* or *Private*
- ② Enter Security Code
- ③ Press  (OK)

To hide secret events

Select *Public*

Locking Keys



■ All Keys Lock

Set *All Keys Lk.* to lock the keypad by following either of the procedures below.

In Standby

Press  → 

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Key Locks* → *All Keys Lk.*

Tip

- All Keys Lock becomes active in Standby.
- If the handset is turned off while in All Keys Lock, the lock is released.

■ Side Keys Lock

[Default] Off

Set *Side Keys Lk.* to lock side keys by following one of the procedures below.

In Standby

Press  → 





From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Settings) → *Security* → *Key Locks* → *Side Keys Lk.* → *On*

Tip


- Even if the handset is turned off while in Side Keys Lock, the lock is not released.



Releasing Key Locks


- To release *All Keys Lk.*, press  →  in Standby.
- To release *Side Keys Lk.*, press  →  in Standby.

Resetting the Handset

Resetting Functions (Settings Reset)


Perform *Settings Reset* to reset functions to defaults. This operation does not delete personal data such as Phone Book Entries. For details on functions to be reset, see "Settings to be Reset" in "Appendix" ( p.19-8).





- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → *Master Reset* → *Settings Reset*
- 2 Enter Security Code

3 Press  (OK)


4 Press  (YES)

Deleting Personal Data (Memory Reset)

Perform *Memory Reset* to delete all personal data such as Phone Book entries, Schedule events, dialed and received calls logs, and received and sent messages. This operation does not delete data stored on the microSD memory card or USIM Card ( p.19-8).


- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → *Master Reset* → *Memory Reset*
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Press  (OK)
- 4 Press  (YES)

Resetting/Deleting All Functions & Personal Data (All Reset)

Perform *All Reset* to reset all functions and delete all personal data. This operation does not delete data stored on the microSD memory card or USIM Card ( p.19-8).

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Phone Settings* → *Master Reset* → *All Reset*

2 Enter Security Code

3 Press  (OK)

4 Press  (YES)

Tip

- **If the handset is turned off during a reset operation**
The reset operation is canceled. Turn on the handset and perform the operation again.
- **If Memory Reset or All Reset is performed**
All content keys are also deleted.

Organiser & Tools

Scheduling (Calendar)

Add up to 200 appointments, personal holidays and events to the Calendar.

■ Viewing the Calendar



Monthly





Weekly



View the Calendar in a monthly or weekly format.



■ Calendar display


The details of the items in the calendar display are as follows.

Today : "  "


Schedule set between 00:00 and 11:59 : "  "  "

Schedule set between 12:00 and 17:59 : "  "  "

Schedule set between 18:00 and 23:59 : "  "  "

Event : "  " with the date in green

Multiday Event : "  " in orange background

Holiday : "  " with the date in red

■ Changing the Format

[Default] MONTHLY

1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calendar*

2 Press  (WEEKLY) or  (MONTHLY)

☾ Tip ☽

- The next time the Calendar appears
In the previously set format.

■ Calendar options


The following options are available for Calendar. The same operation is available on the list and details windows. Displayed options may vary depending on the registration status.

Option	Description
New	Add a new schedule. Select <i>Appointment</i> , <i>Special Occasion</i> , <i>Multiday Event</i> or <i>Days Off</i> .
Edit	Edit the stored schedule.
Copy	Copy the stored schedule.
Filter View	Use the filter settings to view existing schedules.
Jump To Date	Specify a date to display the Calendar including the date.
Memory Status	View the numbers of added and empty schedules.
Synchronisation	Save the selected schedule in vCalendar format. Attach vCalendar to a message.
Delete	Delete the stored schedule.

■ Adding Schedules/Events

The alarm sound, animation and message notify you at the scheduled date and time.

1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calendar*

2 Press  (Options) and select *New* → *Appointment*












To add *Special Occasion* or *Multiday Event*
Select *Special Occasion* or *Multiday Event*

3 Set each item

4 Press  (OK)

Tip

- **Items to set**
The options displayed differ depending on the data to add.

Item	Description
 Filter	Set the filter (<i>Public</i> or <i>Private</i>) ( p.12-6).
 Contents	Enter the contents (Required).
 Start date	Set the start date.
 Start time	Set the start time.
 End time	Set the end time.
 Alarm	Set an alarm on/off.
 Sound	Set the alarm sound (Compatible only with MIDI).
 Time	Select <i>At The Set Time</i> , <i>5 Minutes Before</i> , <i>10 Minutes Before</i> , <i>15 Minutes Before</i> , <i>30 Minutes Before</i> , <i>One Hour Before</i> , <i>90 Minutes Before</i> or <i>Two Hours Before</i> .
Repeat	Set the repeat (<i>Off</i> , <i>Monthly</i> , <i>Weekly</i>).
 Alarm date	Set the alarm date (<i>On the day</i> , <i>1 Day Before</i> , <i>2 Days Before</i> , <i>3 Days Before</i> , <i>5 Days Before</i> , or <i>7 Days Before</i>).
 End date	Set the end date.

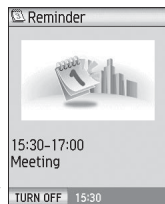
- **If the day of the date set in the start date and the one set in the Weekly repeat are different**
The day set in the Weekly repeat takes priority. The appointment is scheduled to the first weekly day after the start date.

- Setting for Time differ depending on the setting for the display of the time. When 12-hour clock is used, select *AM* or *PM* after the time.

■ When the scheduled time comes

The alarm sounds for about one minute, and the animation appears on Display and on External Display.

To stop the alarm sound, press any key. Press again to clear the alarm message.



The alarm is ineffective when the handset is turned off.

■ Setting Holidays

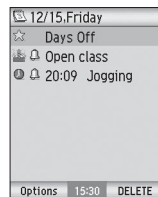
- 1 Press and select **Calendar**
- 2 Press (Options) and select *New* → *Days Off*
- 3 Select *Public Holidays* or *Weekly Days Off*, and set a date

4 Press (OK)

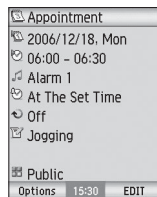
■ Checking Appointments, Holidays & Events

Check the contents on the list or details window of the date.

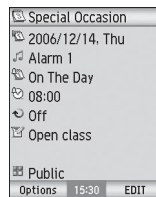
- 1 Press and select **Calendar**
- 2 Select a date
- 3 Select an item



List for the Day



Appointment
Details






Special Occasion
Details

■ Editing Appointments, Holidays & Events






Items to edit are the same as those when adding schedules (p.13-3).

- 1 Press and select **Calendar**

- 2 Select a date and highlight an item to edit
- 3 Press  (EDIT), or press  (Options) and select *Edit*
- 4 Edit the fields
- 5 Press  (OK)

■ Deleting Appointments, Holidays & Events

Delete entries one by one.

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calendar*
- 2 Highlight the date when a schedule or event to be deleted is added, and press 
- 3 Highlight the schedule or event to be deleted
- 4 Press  (Options) and select *Delete* → *Delete Event* → *This Event*
- 5 Press  (YES)

◀ Tip ▶



- To delete all appointments until the selected date or to delete all appointments
Press  (Options) on the Calendar window and select *Delete* → *Delete Event* → *Up To Date*, or *Delete All* → *All, Private* or *Public*.
- To delete holidays
 - ① Select *Delete* → *Delete Day Off* in Step 2
 - ② Select either one of *Select Day Off*, *Up To Date* or *Reset Day Off*
- To delete all appointments by *Delete All* or *Reset Day Off*
Entry of Security Code is required.

Using the Alarms

The handset displays a message, sounds the tone, or vibrates at the set alarm time.

■ Setting Alarms






Up to five alarms can be set.

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Alarms*
- 2 Select a line without an alarm set
- 3 Set the items

4 Press (OK)

Tip

- Alarm items

Item	Description
 Time	Set the alarm time.
Repeat	Select a day to repeat the alarm.
 Contents	Make a note of the alarm.
 Alarm sound	Select a sound (MIDI compatible).
 Vibration	Set the pattern.
 Snooze	Set the snooze.



- Setting for Time differ depending on the setting for the display of the time. When 12-hour clock is used, select *AM* or *PM* after the time.

Changing/Canceling Alarm Settings

1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → Alarms

2 Highlight an alarm


To change the contents

- Press  and change the settings
- Press  (OK)

To skip the repeat alarm once

Press  (SKIP)

To set the alarm off



Press  (OFF)

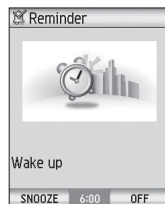
At the set alarm time

The alarm sounds for about three minutes, and the animation appears on Display and on External Display.

To stop the alarm sound, press any key or close the handset.

If Snooze is off, press any key again to clear the alarm message.

If Snooze is on, the alarm sounds again in five minutes. To cancel the Snooze, press  (OFF) while the alarm is sounding, or press  (CANCEL) after stopping the alarm (The Snooze is automatically canceled after it is performed 10 times repeatedly).



The alarm is ineffective when the handset is turned off.

■ Deleting Alarms

1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Alarms*

2 Highlight an alarm

3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*

To delete the selected alarm

Select *Delete*

To delete all alarms

Select *Delete All*

Tip

- To delete all alarms
Entry of Security Code is required.

Using Tasks

Use tasks to post an alarm at a specified time, categorize or set priority to schedules, etc.


■ Creating Tasks

Up to 200 tasks can be created.

1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Tasks*






2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *New*







3 Enter each field

4 Press  (OK)

Tip

- Tasks items

Item	Description
 Category	Set the category.
 Title	Enter a title.
 Contents	Enter the contents.
 Deadline	Set the task deadline.
 Priority	Set the priority. Select <i>High</i> , <i>Standard</i> or <i>Low</i> (The default is <i>Standard</i>).

Item	Description
 Status	Select <i>Not Done</i> or <i>Done</i> .
 Done Date	Enter the date when the task is done.
 Alarm	Set an alarm on/off.
 Sound	Set the alarm sound.
 Alarm date	Set the alarm date.
 Alarm time	Set the alarm time.

- **Setting for Time differ depending on the setting for the display of the time. When 12-hour clock is used, select *AM* or *PM* after the time.**

■ Tasks options

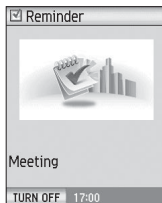
The following options are available for Tasks. Displayed options may vary depending on the registration status.

Option	Description
New	Add a new task.
Edit	Edit the stored task.
Copy	Copy the stored task to create new one.
Filter View	Use the filter settings to view existing tasks.
Memory Status	View the numbers of added and empty tasks, and the numbers of entries with the status Done or Not Done.
Synchronisation	Save the selected task in vCalendar format. Attach vCalendar to a message.
Delete	Delete existing tasks. Select <i>This Task</i> , <i>Delete Done Tasks</i> or <i>Delete All</i> .

■ At scheduled time

The alarm sounds for about one minute, and the animation appears on Display and on External Display.

To stop the alarm sound, press any key. Press again to clear the alarm message.



The alarm is ineffective when the handset is turned off.





■ Checking Tasks

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Tasks*


- 2 Select a task

■ Editing Tasks




- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Tasks*

- 2 Highlight a task to edit
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit*, or press  then  (EDIT)
- 4 Edit the fields
- 5 Press  (OK)

Tip

- To set the status to Done
Press  (DONE) on the list window.

Deleting Tasks

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Tasks*
- 2 Highlight a task
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*

To delete the selected task

Select *This Task*

To delete done tasks only

Select *Delete Done Tasks*

To delete all tasks

Select *Delete All* and enter Security Code

Tip

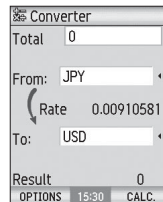
- To delete all tasks
Entry of Security Code is required.

Using the Calculator/Converter

Perform basic arithmetic operations or convert currencies (up to 10 digits including after the decimal point). The function you used the last time is activated.



Calculator



Converter

Using the Calculator

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calc./Converter*

If the Converter appears

Press  (CALC.)

2 Calculate

To enter numbers

Use the dial keys

To enter +, -, ×, ÷

Use the Multi Selector


To enter =

Press 


To enter a decimal point

Press 



To switch between positive and negative

Press 

To clear the result/numbers

Press 

Tip


- If the result exceeds 10 digits
Range Error appears.
- If the calculation fails, *Error* appears.
- To clear all the numbers on the bottom line
Press  (C).
- To clear the entire calculation
Press  (AC).

Using the Converter



Convert currencies using the specified exchange rates.

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Calc./Converter*


If the Calculator appears

Press  (Convert)

2 Convert

- ① Enter the amount in *Total*
- ② Select the source currency from *From:*
- ③ Select the destination currency from *To:*
- ④ Press  (OPTIONS), select *Set Rate* and enter the rate
- ⑤ Press  (OK)






To change currency names

- ① Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit Cur. Unit*
- ② Select a currency and edit the name



Taking Notes (Notepad)

Take notes (up to 512 bytes). The notes can be used for a mail message or alarm message. Up to eight notes can be stored.

■ Adding Notes

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Notepad*
- 2 Press  (NEW), or press  (OPTIONS) and select *New*
- 3 Enter the title and contents
- 4 Press  (SAVE)

Tip





- To edit the stored notes
Press  (EDIT) on the details window, or press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit*. After selecting *Edit*, select *Title* or *Note Contents*.

■ Notepad options




The following options are available for Notepad. Displayed options may vary depending on the registration status.

Option	Description
New	Create a new note.
Edit	Edit the note. Select <i>Title</i> or <i>Note Contents</i> .
Delete	Delete the note(s). Select <i>Delete</i> or <i>Delete All</i> .
Synchronisation	Save the note in vNote format. Attach the note to a message.
Create Calendar	Use the note for a schedule.
Create Task	Use the note for a task.
Shortcut	Create a shortcut to the note on the desktop or on My Menu.

■ Checking/Using the Notes

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Notepad*
- 2 Highlight a note
To check the note
Press 
To use the note
Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Create Calendar* or *Create Task*

■ Deleting the Notes

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Notepad*
- 2 Highlight a note
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*

To delete the selected note

Select *Delete*


To delete all the notes

Select *Delete All*



Tip

- To delete all the notes
Entry of Security Code is required.

Using Answer Phone

Record the other party's message when a voice call cannot be answered. When Answer Phone is set to *On*,  appears in Standby. It is possible to keep up to five records, 20 seconds per record.



Tip

- The number of recorded messages are displayed on the lower right of the Answer Phone icon (from  to ).
- Recording starts automatically when the set answering time after the call reception has passed and the answer message has played.

■ Setting Answer Phone

It is possible to set/release Answer Phone, or set the answer time (the time period until the answer message is played after the call reception) or select the answer message to play.

[Default] Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Answer Phone* → *Settings*
- 2 Select *On*
To release Answer Phone
Select *Off*




3 Change *Answer Time* and *Answer Message* if necessary

To check the answer message




Highlight a message to check and press  (PREVIEW)

4 Press (OK)

Tip








- Press  for 1+ seconds in Standby also set Answer Phone to On/Off.
- To record your own answer message
 - ① Highlight Original from the message list in Step 3
 - ② Press  (RECORD) to start recording
Only one message up to 15 seconds can be recorded as the message for Original.
- The beep sound indicating the end of the message does not sound when the answer message is set to Original.
- Answer Phone cannot be activated when five messages have already been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages ( p.13-14).
- Answer Phone takes priority as the default answer time of Answer Phone (8 seconds) is shorter than the ring duration of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding (20 seconds). The priority changes when the answer time is set to 20 seconds or longer, or when the recorded entries have reached the limit (or depending on the signal reception).
- If the answer time is set to 0 seconds, the ringtone does not sound and the call is answered by the answer message.

■ Playing Answer Phone



- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Answer Phone*
- 2 Select *Play* to display the list
- 3 Highlight a message and press  (PLAY)

■ Operations while playing





The following operations are available while playing a message.

- /Side key : Turn up the volume
- /Side key : Turn down the volume
- : Play the previous or next message
- / : Ends to play the message


Tip

- Press  in standby to play the lastly recorded message.
- Desktop icon appears
 appears when a new Answer Phone message is recorded. Select the icon to display the list of the messages.
- Playing of the message continues when the handset is closed.
However, playing is interrupted by an incoming call.



■ Deleting Answer Phone

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Answer Phone*
- 2 Select *Play* to display the list
- 3 Highlight a message and press  (DELETE)
- 4 Press  (YES)

Recording Your Voice (Voice Recorder)

Record your voice in standby mode (up to 100 records, each of which is up to 180 seconds). The records can be attached to a message. It is possible to record the voice of both the other party and yourself during a call (Call Memo) ( p.2-9).

■ Recording Your Voice

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Voice Recorder*
- 2 Select *Std.ByV.Memo* → *Record*

3 Press to start recording

The recording time is

Counted down from 180 seconds

To stop/end recording







Press 

To cancel recording without finishing

Press  or 

Tip


• Operations available when recording finishes

- To rename the recorded file
Press , select **Rename**, change the file name and press 
- To delete the recorded file
Press , select **Delete** and press  (YES)
- To attach the recorded file to a message
Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Send As Message**, or press  (SEND) and create a new message

• To continuously record

Press  right after recording, to activate Voice Recorder.

• To record the voice during a phone call



Use Call Memo ( p.2-9).

■ Voice Recorder options

Option	Description
Memory Status	View used and free memory, and the numbers of added and empty records.
Rec. Start Sound	Select the start sound for recording.
Multimedia Player	Launch Media Player to play the record.








■ Playing the Records

■ Playing Call Memo



- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Voice Recorder*
- 2 Select *Call Memo* and select a file to play

■ Operations while playing

The following operations are available while playing.









- /Side key : Turn up the volume
- /Side key : Turn down the volume
- : Play the previous or next call memo
- /CLEAR BACK/: Ends to play call memo

■ Playing Standby Voice Memo




- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Voice Recorder*
- 2 Select *Std.ByV.Memo* → *Play*
- 3 Select a file to play

■ Operations while playing

The following operations are available while playing.





- /Side key : Turn up the volume
- /Side key : Turn down the volume
-  for 1+ seconds: Rewind
-  for 1+ seconds: Fast-forward
- : Pause/Play
- : Ends to play standby voice memo

Tip





- To play selecting from Data Folder
 - ① Press  and select  (Data Folder) → *Other Folders* → *Voice Rec.*
 - ② Select a file
- Press  (PLAY) in Standby for recording, to play the lastly recorded data.

■ Deleting Voice Memo

■ Deleting Call Memo

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Voice Recorder*
- 2 Select *Call Memo* and highlight a file to delete
- 3 Press  (DELETE) and press  (YES)

■ Deleting Standby Voice Memo

- 1 Press  and select  (Organiser & Tools) → *Voice Recorder*
- 2 Select *Std.ByV.Memo* → *Play* and highlight a file to delete
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS), select *Delete* and press  (YES)

Advanced Settings

Advanced Operations During a Call

■ Sending Push Tones (Dial Pause)

Send push tones to remotely control a home answering machine, send messages to pagers or use services that require push tones.

■ Saving Dial Pause Data

Save Dial Pause data that will be sent as push tones. 0 to 9, #, * and "p" (pause) can be saved. Enter "p" where you want to add a pause to separate push tones. Only one data file (up to 128 characters) can be saved.

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → Common Set. → Dial Pause Set.

2 Enter dialing data

3 Press  (OK)

Tip

- To enter "p"
Press  for 1+ seconds.

■ Sending Push Tones

Make a call to send the saved Dial Pause data as push tones. The numbers up to pause are automatically sent at 3 seconds interval.

1 Make a call

2 During the call, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Send Pause Dial*

Tip

- Dialing during a call or after a phone number entry can also send push tones.

Setting a Call Handling Operation When the Handset is Closed (Close Setting)

Set a call handling operation performed when the handset is closed.

[Default] End The Call

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → Voice Call → Close Setting

2 Select an item


Call handling operations

Select one of the followings:

- **Mute:** Mute sound.
- **Hold:** Put a call on hold.
- **End The Call:** End a call.

When **Mute** or **Hold** is set, open the handset again to return to the call.

Note

- When a stereo microphone is connected, *Close Setting* does not work. To enable this setting, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Unmute*, etc.
- When the handset is closed during a video call, the call ends. If it is closed during a video call using a stereo microphone and the camera image, a substitute image is sent to the other party.

Using a Stereo Microphone

Open the earphone jack and external connector covers, insert the plug of the headset adapter and connect a stereo microphone.

Using the Speaker

Make the speaker emit sound as well as the earphone when a stereo microphone is connected.

[Default] Handsfree Only

1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Headset*

2 Select an item

Making Calls with a Single Operation

Press the switch on a stereo microphone to make calls to the Phone Book entry with Entry No. 001.

1 Press the switch for 1+ seconds

2 Press the switch for 1+ seconds again to end the call

Tip

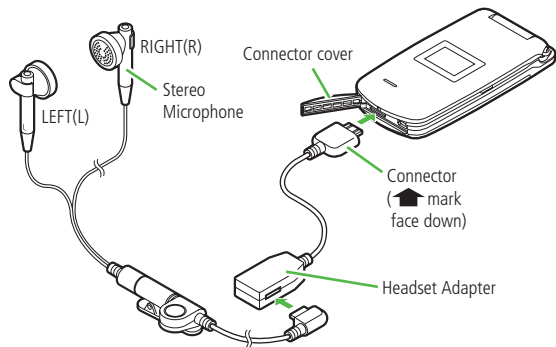
- When making a call using a stereo microphone, the call is made to the destination set by *Set As Default* (p.4-8). A call is made when a phone number is set, a New Message window appears when a mail address is set, or access to a Web page when a URL is set.

Receiving Calls with a Single Operation

1 Press the switch for 1+ seconds while the handset is ringing

2 Press the switch for 1+ seconds again to end the call

■ Notes on using a stereo microphone



- To use a stereo microphone on the handset, connect the bundled headset adapter.
- Insert the microphone plug into the earphone jack securely. Failure to do so may cause you to hear no sound.
- You may receive a call if connecting a stereo microphone while the handset is ringing.

■ Receiving Calls Automatically (Auto Answer)

Set **Auto Answer** to answer calls automatically when a stereo microphone is connected. Set **On** for this setting to automatically answer a call in five seconds after the handset starts ringing.

[Default] Off

- 1 Press and select (Settings) → **Sound/ Mode**
- 2 Highlight a mode, press (EDIT)
- 3 Select **Other Settings** and set **Auto Answer** to **On**
- 4 Press (OK)



Note

- When you carry on your handset with a stereo microphone in the bag, pulling out the microphone plug is recommended so as to avoid pressing the switch and making a call by accident.
- If **Answer Phone** is set to **On**, Answer Phone takes priority.

Sending Push Tones

Set *Send Tones* to *On* to send push tones during a call.

[Default] On




- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Send Tones*
- 2 Select an item

Setting the International Access Code





Save up to five international access codes such as an international code or a country code. Also, the saved codes can be edited or deleted.

[Default] Intern. Call(Japan) 0046010
 Intern. Call(Oversea) +81

■ Adding the International Access Code

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Prefix* → *No Stored*
- 2 Enter *Name* and *Prefix*
- 3 Press  (OK)





■ Editing the International Access Code

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Prefix*
- 2 Select the registered name to edit
- 3 Press  (EDIT)
- 4 Change *Name* and *Prefix* if necessary
- 5 Press  (OK)

☞ Tip ☜

- *Intern. Call(Japan)*/*Intern. Call(Oversea)* cannot be edited.

■ Deleting the International Access Code

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *Common Set.* → *Prefix*
- 2 Highlight the item to delete
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*
- 4 Press  (YES)

☞ Tip ☜

- *Intern. Call(Japan)*/*Intern. Call(Oversea)* cannot be deleted.

Optional Services

Optional Services Overview

The following optional services are available:

Service	Description
Call Forwarding	Forward an incoming call to a specified phone number. To use the Voice Mail service, select the Voice Mail Service Center phone number as a forwarding number.
Voice Mail	Let the caller leave a message in the Voice Mail Service Center when an incoming call cannot be answered. * Missed Call Notification function Customers with Voice Mail turned on will automatically receive free SMS notifications on calls they receive while their handset is turned off or out of service area.
Call Waiting*	Place a call on hold to take another incoming call. Alternate between the two parties.
Group Talk*	Make a call to another party during a call. Up to six people can talk on the same call.
Call Barring	Block incoming/outgoing calls or SMS.
Caller ID Notification	Notify the other party of your Caller ID or check the other party's Caller ID.
Caller ID Information	Show or hide your Caller ID when calling the other party.

* A separate subscription is required.

For information on services, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Using Optional Services

Start or stop the optional services by using the menus, using service codes and setting services from a landline.


Using the Menus

Using operation services by operating the menu.

For details, see sections below (Call Forwarding, Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Barring and Caller ID).

Tip

- If the confirmation window for the network settings appears during operations










Press  (YES) and continue operations.

Using Service Codes

Use service codes to activate/deactivate services.

1 Enter a service code

2 Press

Service	Setting	Service Code
Voice Mail/Call Forwarding	Activate	 →  → Condition code* 1 →  → Forwarding number →  → Incoming call type* 2 → (Only If No Answer  → Ring Duration 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30) 
	Deactivate	 →  → Condition code* 1 → 

Service	Setting	Service Code
Call Waiting	Activate	* → → → #
	Deactivate	# → → → #
Call Barring	Activate	* → Options code *3 → * → Network Password → #
	Deactivate	* → Options code *3 → * → Network Password → #
	Change code	* → → → * → → → → * → Current Network Password → * → New Network Password → #

*1 Condition code

All Calls:

If Busy:

If Unreachable:

If No Answer:

*2 Incoming call type

Voice Calls:

Video Calls:

*3 Options code

All Calls:

International Calls:

Except Local & Home:

All Calls:

All If Roamed:

Setting Services from a Landline

Change settings from a landline when handset is out of range or you do not have your handset. For information on the operations, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Call Forwarding

The following Conditions are available when setting Call Forwarding:

Condition	Description
All Calls	Forward all calls. The ringtone does not sound and the missed call indicator does not appear.
If No Answer	Forward a call if the call is not answered within the set Ring Duration.
If Busy	Forward a call during another call.
If Unreachable	Forward a call when the handset is turned off or out of service area.

Activating Call Forwarding

Set a forwarding number for each Condition. Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set at the same time.

- Press and select (Settings) → Call Settings → All Calls → VoMail/Diverts

2 Select *Diverts Setup* and select *Voice Calls* or *Video Calls*


Current settings appear in the respective fields

3 Select an item from *Condition*

4 Select *Diverts Calls To* and enter a forwarding number



To set the Ring Duration for *If No Answer*

① Select *Ring Duration*

② Use  to select a ring time

5 Press (UPDATE)

Tip


- To select a forwarding number from **Phone Book**
On the *Diverts Calls To* window, press  (FIND) and select *Phone Book*.
- To request current status from the network center
 - ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Select *Diverts Setup* and press  (CHECK)
Handset connects to the network and Diverts settings appear.
Select *Voice Calls* or *Video Calls* to view advanced settings.

Note

- Video calls cannot be forwarded to the Voice Mail Service Center.





- Set the phone number of a Video Call-compatible device which supports 3G-324M as a forwarding number. When forwarding a video call, video calls are not forwarded to devices other than a Video Call-compatible device which supports 3G-324M.

Forwarding manually


If *If Busy* is selected, a call can be manually forwarded by pressing  (OPTIONS) and selecting *Diverts* while the phone is ringing. If Call Waiting is activated, the same operation is available while the Call Waiting alert tone sounds.

Deactivating Call Forwarding


Deactivate the service for each incoming call type.

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *VoMail/Diverts*
- 2 Select *Diverts Setup* and select *Voice Calls* or *Video Calls*
- 3 Select *Diverts Off* from *Condition*
- 4 Press  (UPDATE)
- 5 Press  (YES)



Tip

- To deactivate all forwarding services
 - Perform Step 1
 - Select **All Deactive** and press  (YES)

Checking Settings Automatically

The forwarding settings ( p.15-3) can be automatically checked when the handset is turned on or the menu is launched.

[Default] Off

- Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → All Calls → VoMail/Diverts
- Select **Auto Check**
- Select an item

Voice Mail


To use the Voice Mail, set Voice Mail Service Center phone number as the forwarding number for Call Forwarding. Therefore, Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be used at the same time.

- Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → All Calls → VoMail/Diverts

- Select **Diverts Setup** and select **Voice Calls** or **Video Calls**

- Select an item from **Condition**

- Select **Diverts Calls To**

- Press  (FIND) and select **Voicemail Centre**

- Press  (UPDATE)



Tip




- When **Voicemail Centre** is selected, 09066517000 (the Voice Mail Service Center phone number) appears as the forwarding number.

Note

- Video calls cannot be forwarded to the Voice Mail Service Center phone number.

Playing Voice Mail Messages

Play messages stored at the Voice Mail Service Center. When you have a message,  appears on Display, and  on External Display.

- Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → All Calls → Play Voicemail
- Select **Listen VoMail** and press  (YES)

Tip

- While roaming, the Voice Mail Service Center number is automatically set to *Abroad*.

Changing Voice Mail Service Center Number

[Default] ■ 1416

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Play Voicemail*
- 2 Select *VoMailCentre#*
- 3 Select *Home* or *Abroad*
- 4 Enter a phone number and press  (OK)






Activating/Deactivating Missed Call Notification

Receive SMS notifications on calls you receive while the handset is turned off or out of service area.

Tip

- The Missed Call Notification becomes available when the Missed Call Notification is activated and *Condition* of the Voice Mail service is set to *All Calls* or *If Unreachable*.
- Also receive notifications on voice messages left during a call.

Setting Missed Call Notification

- 1 Press     and then 
- 2 Follow voice instructions to activate or deactivate the service

Tip

- To set from a landline
Dial 090-665-1414
- To set from overseas
Dial +81-90-665-14191

Call Waiting

Use Call Waiting to answer an incoming call during another call. A fee-based subscription is required to use the service.

■ Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting

- 1 Press and select (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Call Waiting*
- 2 Select *Activate* or *Deactivate*

Tip

- To check the settings
 - ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Press (CHECK)

■ Answering Another Call During a Call

Put the current voice call on hold and answer an incoming voice call. The calls may be switched.

- 1 When you hear the alert tone, press or (ANSWER) to answer another call
To switch between the calls
Press (SWAP)

Tip

- If the current call is cut off while another call is waiting
Press (RETRIEVE) to retrieve the call on hold.

- If a further call comes while another call is waiting
Press or (ANSWER) to end the current call and answer the incoming call.
- To reject incoming call waiting during a call
Press (OPTIONS) and select *Reject*.

Note

- Call Waiting is unavailable for a video call.
- Press to hang up both the call on hold and current call.

Group Talk

A fee-based subscription is required.

Make a voice call to another party during a call. Up to six people can talk on the same call.

An international call can also be made.



■ Launching a Group Talk

- 1 Press (HOLD) during a call
- 2 Enter a phone number and press

To make a call from the Phone Book

- ① Press and call up the Phone Book (p.4-6)
- ② Press

To make a call from the history

- 1 Use  and highlight the phone number or name to call
- 2 Press 

3 When a call is connected between you and the other party, press (OPTIONS) and select *Join Calls*

Tip

- A non-subscriber to the service can join a Group Talk.

Talking to Two or More Parties Simultaneously

If receiving a call or making a call to another party during a Group Talk, it is possible to talk with the parties simultaneously.



1 When a call is connected between you and the other party, press (OPTIONS) and select *Join Calls*

Tip




- Up to six people can join a Group Talk. If receiving a call from/making a call to the seventh party, five people excluding you are put on hold.

Talking to Specific People

It is possible to talk to specific people only during a Group Talk. The selected parties are regarded as disconnected from the Group Talk.

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) during a talk, and select *Drop or Split Call*
- 2 Select parties from the participant list
- 3 Press  (SPLIT)

Tip

- To disconnect the selected parties, press  (DROP) in Step 3.
- While talking to specific parties, the other parties are put on hold. To switch between hold and talk, press  (SWAP).
- To retrieve parties regarded as disconnected, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Join Calls*.

Call Barring

Block incoming/outgoing calls or SMS.




Option		Description
Outgoing (Voice) (Video) (SMS)	Deactivate	Deactivate Call Barring.
	Except Local & Home	Block outgoing calls/SMS to areas other than home (service area of the provider you subscribe to).
	International Calls	Block international calls or SMS.
	All Calls	Allow emergency calls only.
Incoming (Voice) (Video) (SMS)	Deactivate	Deactivate Call Barring.
	All If Roamed	Block incoming calls or SMS in areas other than home (service area of the provider you subscribe to).
	All Calls	Block all calls or SMS.

The Network Password (a four-digit number set at subscription) is required to be entered.


Note

- If the Network Password is entered incorrectly three times in a row, Call Barring settings are locked and you need to change Network Password and Center Access Code to unlock. For details, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).
- While Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is activated, All Calls is unavailable.




Blocking Incoming/Outgoing Calls

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → All Calls → Call Barring
- 2 Select *Outgoing Voice/Video/SMS or Incoming Voice/Video/SMS*
- 3 Select an item
- 4 Enter the Network Password and press  (OK)




Tip

- To check the settings
 - ① Perform Step 1 and 2
 - ② Press  (CHECK)

Canceling All Restrictions

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → Call Settings → All CB Stop
- 2 Select *All CB Stop*
- 3 Enter the Network Password and press  (OK)


■ Changing Network Password

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Call Barring*
- 2 Select *New Password*
- 3 Enter the current Network Password
- 4 Enter a new Network Password
- 5 Re-enter the new Network Password and press  (OK)

Caller ID

Set whether to notify the other party of your Caller ID.

■ Send Caller ID

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Caller ID*
- 2 Select *Send*



■ Block Caller ID

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Caller ID*
- 2 Select *Withhold*

☰ Tip ☰

- The Caller ID notification setting set using the menu is retained until the setting is changed, *All Reset* or *Settings Reset* is performed, or the USIM Card is replaced.

■ Network Default

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Caller ID*
- 2 Select *Network Default*


Manually Send Caller ID

1 Press    or    

2 Enter a phone number

3 Press 

To make a video call

Press  (VID. CALL)

Tip

- "186" or "*31#" entered when inputting a phone number takes priority over Caller ID information settings.


Manually Block Caller ID

1 Press    or    

2 Enter a phone number

3 Press 

To make a video call

Press  (VID. CALL)

Tip

- "184" or "#31#" entered when inputting a phone number takes priority over Caller ID information settings.

Display Caller ID

It is possible to confirm if the Caller ID is set to be notified when a call is incoming.

Confirm Subscription Status

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Call Settings* → *All Calls* → *Caller ID Info*.

Messaging

Messaging

Two types of message services, S! Mail and SMS, are available.

S! Mail

Use S! Mail to exchange text messages, images, sounds and videos with SoftBank handsets, e-mail compatible handsets and PCs.

* Separate subscription is required to use S! Mail.

SMS

This message service is available for connection between SoftBank handsets using a phone number for an address.

Tip

- **For information on connection fees**

Contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

- **Retry function**

If handset is turned off or out of the service area, messages are stored on the server and automatically resent.

Customizing Handset Address

Change your mail address before the @ to reduce the risk of receiving spam.

The initial account name is a random set of alphanumeric letters.

<Example>

(Initial) xxxxxxxxxx@softbank.ne.jp

↓

(Customized) softbank_taro@softbank.ne.jp

* Change handset address up to three times within a 24 hour period. You are limited to a total of 99 changes.

The following apply.

- * Character count: 3 to 30 single-byte letters
Accepted characters: Single-byte alphanumerics, underscore, hyphen and period.
- * No numeric characters can be used for the first letter of the account name.
- * No spaces can be used.
- * Case insensitive.
- * No dots can be used as the last letter of the account name (preceding @). Two or more periods in series may prevent from sending or receiving a mail on some providers.
- * No names related to our company or service can be obtained.

- 1 Press  () in Standby
- 2 Select 設定・申込 (Settings/Applications)
- 3 Select 各種変更手続き (Change Settings)
- 4 Select オリジナルメール設定 (メール各種設定) (Original Settings/Mail Settings) and press 


5 Follow the on-screen instructions

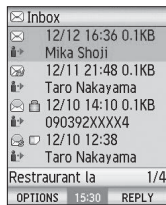
Note

- The above procedure may change without prior notice. For further information, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Checking a New Message

A desktop indicator notifies you of a new message.

- Press  and select the new message indicator
- Select a message





Inbox List Window



Message Window

Tip

- When you set the automatic filter, the MyFolder may be displayed instead of Inbox.
- Desktop icon appears
 appears when you receive a new message. If you confirm all notice lists or view the Inbox lists,  disappears.

Checking Messages on the External Display

Check messages on External Display when the handset is closed. When a message arrives, ringtone sounds and notification appears on External Display. When setting **Receiving Messages** to **On** for External Display, the name or address of the sender may be displayed depending on the status of the entry registration.






When setting **Receiving Messages** to **Off** for External Display, the name and address of the sender are not displayed (☎ p.7-3).





Retrieving S! Mail

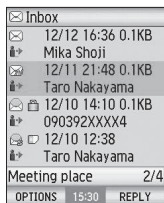
When an S! Mail is sent to multiple addresses or a file is attached, the initial portion of the text message is received as a notification. The complete message is temporarily stored on the server (Service Center) for the following conditions.*1

- When Auto Receive function is not set*2
- Handset memory is full*3
- During a video call
- During packet transmission with an external device connected

- *1 When S! Mail is stored at the service center or you have an unread message,  appears at the top of the window.
- *2 Set Auto Receive to automatically receive the complete S! Mail (p.16-26).
- *3 When handset memory is full, reception notification cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages/files, press  () and select **Server Mail** to download unretrieved messages.

Perform the following steps to retrieve the complete message.

- 1 Press  and select new messages icon
- 2 Select a new message with  on Inbox




Inbox List Window

- 3 Press  (RECEIVE)



Message Window

Tip

- Alternatively retrieve S! Mail using message list (p.16-23).
- When the message appears confirming the network connection has been established on operation during roaming, press  (YES).

Using the Received Message

It is possible to reply (p.16-16) or forward (p.16-17) a message using the received message.

Creating a Message

Maximum Number of Characters

The following table shows the maximum number of characters per message type.

Message type	Maximum number of characters
S! Mail	About 3,400 double-byte or 10,000 single-byte characters Note: Total message size (including text, attachments and subject field) cannot exceed 300 KB.
SMS	70 double-byte characters (under 140 single-byte characters) when message includes both single-byte and double-byte characters. 160 single-byte characters when entire message is composed in single-byte characters.

Tip

- When exceeding a maximum number of characters to enter while creating a SMS message with double-byte characters, the message is automatically deleted.

Entry Field

The following shows the available entry field per message type.

Message type	Field			
	Text	Address	Subject	Attachment
S! Mail	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
SMS	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

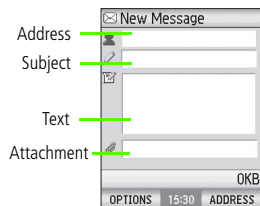
: It is possible to surely enter

: It is possible to enter

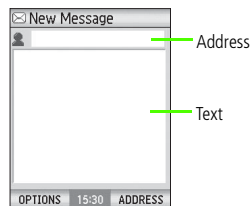
: It is not possible to enter

* Address field must be entered.

* Attach files to create slides (p.16-8).



S! Mail Window



SMS Window

Tip

- Address
Use phone numbers or e-mail addresses for S! Mail and phone numbers for SMS.

Sending a Message

- Press () or press and select (Messaging)
- Select *CreateMessage*
- Select the message type
- Enter the address
- Complete the necessary information in optional items
- Press (SEND)






Selecting Message Type

Select S! Mail or SMS on the message type window and a message window appears.




- Press ()
From the main menu
Press and select (Messaging)

- 2 Select *CreateMessage*
- 3 Select *S! Mail or SMS*

■ Entering Address

- 1 Move the cursor to the address field on New Message, and press 
- 2 Highlight <New Address>
- 3 Press  and enter the address
To add addresses
Perform either of the following operations:
 - Repeat Steps 2 and 3
 - Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Add*
- 4 Press  or  (OK) to go back to on New Message

Tip



- Only one address can be enter for SMS.
- To quote the address from the phonebook
 - ① Move the cursor to the address field on New Message and press  (ADDRESS), or highlight <New Address> on the address window to press  (OPTIONS), and then select *Open Phone Book*
 - ② Highlight an entry and press  (USE)

• Adding more addresses



Up to 20 addresses including Cc or Bcc can be set.

Cc and Bcc are used to send a copy of message. The phone number or message address specified to Cc appears on the message. However, those to Bcc are not displayed.



• To change the added address type (Cc/Bcc)

- ① Move the cursor to the address field and press 
- ② Highlight the address to be changed and press  (OPTIONS), then select *Address Type*
- ③ Select the type



• To change address

- ① Move the cursor to the address field and press 
- ② Highlight the address to be changed and press  (OPTIONS), then select *Change*



• To delete address

- ① Move the cursor to the address field and press 
- ② Highlight the address to be deleted and press  (OPTIONS), then select *Delete*


■ Entering Subject

- 1 Move the cursor to the subject field on New Message and press 
- 2 Enter the subject
- 3 Press  to return to New Message




■ Entering Text

- 1 Move the cursor to the Text field on New Message and press 
- 2 Input texts
- 3 Press  to return to the new message window after

■ Sending

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) on New Message and select *Send*

◀ Tip ▶

- To stop sending a message
Press either ,  (CANCEL) or  on the Sending window. The canceled message is stored in Drafts.

■ New Message window menu

The following menus are available on New Message.
Options may be greyed out in some situations.

Option	Description
Edit	Edit message.
Send	Send message.


Option	Description
Save	Stores message on Drafts.
Take Photo	Start Camera to shoot a picture for attachment.
Take Video	Start Camera and take a video for attachment.
Message Type*	Change the message type from SMS to S! Mail.
Send Option	Set Priority , DeliveryReport , DeliveryTime and Validity Period .
3D Pictogram	Show the input 3D pictogram as your confirmation. Use this option before sending the message to 3D-pictogram-compatible handset.

* Cannot change the message type from S! Mail to SMS.

File Attachment

Images, sounds and videos can be attached to the S! Mail message. 300 KB per one message can be sent including the total data size of texts, addresses, subjects and attached files.

■ Files from Data Folder

- 1 Move the cursor to the attachment field on New Message and press 
- 2 Select a file

Tip

• Adding attachments

When attaching two or more files, choose either *Presentation Format* (p.16-8) or *Text Format*.

Note

- Some contents cannot be sent as S! Mail attachments due to content copyrights (content key).

Options on file attachment

When a file is already attached another file on SMIL Comp. may be added. The following Options are available in this window. Options may be greyed out in some situations.

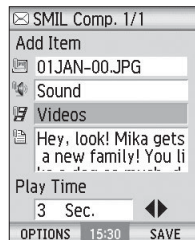
Option	Description
Change	Change the attached file to another file.
Delete	Delete the attached file.
Add	Attach a file.
Take Photo	Shoot a picture to be attached.
Take Video	Take a video to be attached.
Show/Play	Show or play the attached file.

Creating Slides

Adding Slides

When you attach the second file from New Message, selecting *Presentation Format* opens the SMIL Comp. window.

On SMIL Comp., slides can be added one file before or after the attached file and edit those slides.



SMIL Comp. Window



Preview Window

- 1 Attach the additional file on New Message where the first file is already attached
- 2 Select *Presentation Format*

3 Select any file to be added from Data Folder

To add a picture

Select *Image* → *Image File* or *Take Photo*

To add sound

Select *Sound* to choose a sound file from the music folders of Data Folder

To add video

Select *Videos* → *Video File* or *Take Video*

To add text

Select *Text* to input messages

4 Press (SAVE)

Note

- Check that the other party's handset supports the presentation format beforehand. If not support, images, sound and texts in presentation format are a normal attachment.
- Videos cannot be added to the same slide containing images or sound. If adding videos, use another slide or delete the image or sound.

SMIL Comp. options


The following options are available on SMIL Comp. Options may be greyed out in some situations.

Option	Description
Delete Item	Delete input data or file from the selected item.
Add Slide	Add a new slide after the edited slide.
Insert Slide	Add a new slide before the edited slide.
Delete	Delete the edited slide.
Preview This Slide	Preview the edited slide.
Preview	Preview all the slides.
Slide Options	Set the details (<i>Text Colour</i> and <i>Background Colour</i>) on each slide.

Slide Interval

Set the time interval between slides. A range from 1 to 10 seconds can be set.


1 Move the cursor to the *Play Time* field on SMIL Comp.

2 Use  to set the time interval

Send Option

Using **Send Option** allows you to change the following options set in **Settings** (☰ p.16-26) when you send the message. This option makes only one message available for change.

Option	Description
Priority	Set sending priority.
DeliveryReport	Confirm arrival of the sent message with the delivery report.
Delivery Time	Set the time interval for sending a message. The message is stored on the mail server until the set interval elapses.
Validity Period	Set the time that the message server keeps the message. The message is deleted after the set time elapses.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) on New Message and select **Send Option**

2 Select item to set value

To set priority

- ① Select **Priority**
- ② Select any value

To set the delivery report

- ① Select **DeliveryReport**
- ② Select any value

To set the delivery time

- ① Select **Delivery Time**
- ② Select any value

To set the validity period


- ① Select **Validity Period**
- ② Select any value

Note

- Stored messages are automatically deleted from the mail server after the maximum storage time elapses even when the validity period is set.
- **DeliveryReport** and **Validity Period** can be set for SMS.

Drafts

Save unsent messages to Drafts (☰ p.16-11). Messages saved to Drafts can be edited and sent at a later time.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) on New Message and select **Save**

Checking Messages

Messages are stored and organized in the mail box and can be checked at any time. Mail box is a generic term used to refer to **Inbox**, **Outbox**, **Drafts**, **Sent Messages** and **MyFolder**.

Each folder contains messages according to the type.

Folder	Mail
Inbox	Contain delivered messages.
Outbox	Contain messages failed to be sent.
Drafts	Contain messages that could not be sent.
Sent Messages	Contain sent messages.
MyFolder*	Contain messages automatically sorted or moved manually from Inbox.

* There are 10 Folders (**MyFolder1** to **10**). These folder names can be changed.

Checking Message List

1 Press  ()

From the main menu

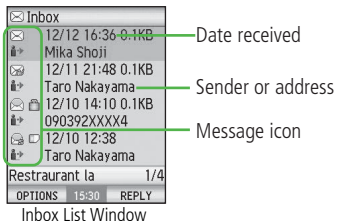
Press  and select  (Messaging)

2 Select a folder

3 Select any message on the message list and press



Message List Window



Indicators for message

-  : Unread S! Mail
-  : Read S! Mail
-  : Replied message
-  : Diverted message
-  : Replied and diverted message
-  : Protected message
-  : Replied and protected message
-  : Diverted and protected message
-  : Replied, diverted and protected message
-  : Protected message with attachment file
-  : Replied and protected message with attachment file
-  : Diverted and protected message with attachment file
-  : Replied, diverted protected message with attachment file
-  : Message with attachment file

- : Replied message with attachment file
- : Diverted message with attachment file
- : Replied, diverted message with attachment file
- : Unsent message stored in the mail server
- : Message diverted to the mail server
- : Message diverted to the mail server (failed)
- : High priority message
- : Unread SMS
- : Read SMS
- : SMS stored in USIM Card
- : Sender
- : Address
- : Sent S! Mail
- : Sent S! Mail with delivery report
- : Sent S! Mail with delivery report (succeeded)
- : Sent S! Mail with delivery report (failed)
- : Sent S! Mail with delivery report (unknown)
- : Sent S! Mail (failed)
- : Draft S! Mail
- : Sent SMS
- : Sent SMS with delivery report
- : Sent SMS with delivery report (succeeded)
- : Sent SMS with delivery report (failed)

- : Sent SMS (failed)
- : Draft SMS

Tip

- The number of received messages and the subject of the S! Mail pointed with cursor are displayed on the bottom line.

Operations on the Message Window

Message Window



SMS or S! Mail without Attachments

- * Subject is available for S! Mail.



- Sender
- Subject
- Attachment file
- Content

S! Mail with Attachments

* If you click the **Image** box on **Automatic Play**, an image appears after the message. (p.16-26)

Tip

- If **3D Pictogram** is set, **3D pictogram** appears after selecting a mail. **3D Pictogram** setting is set to **Unread msgs only** by default (p.16-30).

Operations while 3D pictogram appears:

- (Pause/Resume) : Pause and resume 3D pictogram display
- (BACK) : Return to the message window

Slides

The slide-style messages automatically start playing after the message window appears.

- Select a slide-style message on the message list and press (Select)

To pause during image playing

Press (Pause)

To resume playing

Press (Resume)

To start playing from the beginning

Press (Play)

Tip

- To change in manual playing
 - Press (Messaging), or press (Messaging)
 - Select **Settings** → **S! Mail Settings** → **Receive Opt.** → **Automatic Play**, and uncheck the **Slide** box
 - Press (OK)
- To mute the sound

Press either the **0** key to **9** key, ***** key or **#** key.
- A slide with movie cannot be played while activating the Music Player.

Message window options

The following operations are available using option items. Options may be greyed out in some situations.

Folder Management

There are 10 **MyFolder** for the received messages for sorting and storing messages.

Option	Description
Show Focus Item	Display the selected item such as address.
Save SMIL Contents	Save as an attachment for a slide-style message.
Reply	Select reply type (p.16-16).
Forward	Forward a message to other addresses.
Move	Move a message to another folder.
Delete Message	Delete a selected message.
Anchor to...	Run phonebook entry, bookmark addition, message transfer, voice calls, video calls and browser.
Message Details	Show message details.
Font Size	Select font size (large, medium or small).
Previous	Show the previous message.
Next	Show the next message.
3D Pictogram	Show 3D graphics for text.
Protection	Prevent messages from being deleted by accident. Protected messages are to be unprotected.

Changing Folder Names

MyFolder contain **MyFolder1** to **MyFolder10** at default. The folder names can be changed.


- Press () and select **MyFolder**
From the Main Menu
Press and select (Messaging) → **MyFolder**
- Highlight a folder and press (OPTIONS) and select **Rename**
- Enter the folder name
- Press

Selecting Multiple Messages




Move, protect or delete multiple messages by one operation.

- Press (OPTIONS) on the message list window and select **Select Message**
- Select the folder which contains messages to move
- Repeat Step 2
- Press (OPTIONS) and select an operation

If messages to select are listed in succession

Move the cursor to the last message to select after Step 2 and press  to highlight all the message.

Tip



- The target messages can be selected by pressing .
- The selected messages can be released by pressing .
- To select all messages, press  (ALL) after performing Step 1.
- If selecting the highlighted messages again, the messages can be released one by one.

Move Messages to Other Folders

Move messages in *Inbox* and *MyFolder* to another folder. Also move SMS in *Inbox* and *Outbox* between the handset and the USIM Card.

1 Press  (

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging)




2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a message or select multiple messages

4 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Move*

5 Select a destination folder

Tip

- Messages in *MyFolder* can be moved to other *MyFolder*.
- Only SMS in *Inbox* and *Sent Messages* can be moved to the *USIM*.  appears on the left side of the message when moved.
- If the USIM Card is full,  appears at the top of the window and messages cannot be moved to the *USIM*. Delete unnecessary SMS () or move to the handset.

Note

- If you have moved an SMS in Outbox to the USIM Card, the date and time appears as "??/? ??:??".

Automatic Sorting to a Specified Folder

Messages can be automatically sorted to a specified folder according to the address.


1 Press  (

From the Main Menu



Press  and select  (Messaging)

2 Select *MyFolder*


3 Highlight the folder to be automatically sorted

4 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Mail Distribute*


To add sorting conditions

- 1 Highlight <New Address>
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Add** or press 
- 3 Enter the address


To refer to the phonebook

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Open Phone Book**


To delete the sorting conditions

- 1 Highlight sorting condition
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Delete**

To delete all the sorting conditions

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Delete all**

To change the sorting conditions

- 1 Highlight the sorting condition
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Change**







Tip

- **Sorting is performed using an address set to the user folder. If two or more user folders has the same criteria, a message is sorted to the user folder set first.**

Reply Message




It is possible to reply the message to the original sender or address. Only messages in **Inbox** or **MyFolder** can be replied. The items automatically created by reply are as follows.

Item	Description
Text	For Reply With Quote , Reply All With Quote (for only S! Mail), the text of the original mail is quoted.
Address	Received mail sender is automatically entered.
Subject(for only S! Mail)	The subject adding Re: at the beginning is automatically entered.

- 1 Press  ()
From the Main Menu
Press  and select  (Messaging)
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Highlight a message and press  (REPLY) or press  (OPTIONS) to select **Reply**
- 4 Select **Reply Type**
To reply the sender
Select **Reply**
To reply the sender with quote text
Select **Reply With Quote**
To reply the sender and all addresses
Select **Reply All**
To reply the sender and all addresses with quote text
Select **Reply All With Quote**
- 5 Select the message type if displayed

6 Create and send the message (☞ p.16-4)

☞ Tip ☞

- Selecting *Reply Type* displays the message type window. However, if the address to be returned is an email address type containing the @ mark, no message type window appears and New Message for S! Mail opens.
- To edit quote indicator
The quote indicator can be changed.
 - ① Press  () and select *Settings* → *General* → *QuoteIndicator*
 - ② Press  in the quote indicator field and edit quote indicator.

Forwarding Message

It is possible to transfer received messages to other address. Only messages in *Inbox* or *MyFolder* can be transferred. The items automatically created by transfer are as follows.

Item	Description
Text	The text of the original mail is entered.
Address	Nothing is entered.
Subject(for only S! Mail)	The subject adding <i>Fw:</i> at the beginning is automatically entered.
Attachment file(for only S! Mail)	The file which is attached to the original mail is attached to except for a file that cannot be transferred.

1 Press  ()

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging)

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a message

4 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Forward*

5 Create and send a message (☞ p.16-4)

☞ Tip ☞

- The message type is the same as the original for *Forward*.

Message from Outbox

1 Press  () and select *Outbox*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Outbox*

2 Select a message

3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Send*


Tip

- **To edit unsent messages before sending**

Edit the message on the message window before sending a message.



Message Protection

It is possible to protect the messages in *Inbox*, *Sent Messages* or *MyFolder* not to be deleted.


The protected message appears with  in the list.


1 Press  ()

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging)

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a message or select multiple messages
( p.16-14)

4 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Protection* or *Cancel Protection*

Note



- *Memory Reset* or *All Reset* deletes all protected messages except messages stored.

Message Deletion


Delete a Specified Message


1 Press  ()

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging)

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a message or select multiple messages
( p.16-14)



4 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete Message*

Delete All the Messages under Message Box or Folder

Delete the messages collectively by the whole mail box or folder. SMS in the USIM Card will also be deleted.

1 Press  ()

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging)

2 Select the message box or folder

3 Press (OPTIONS) and select *Delete All*

4 Enter the current handset code

Tip

- For protected message

Not deleted.

- To delete all messages under all message boxes and folders

① Press (

② Press (OPTIONS) and select *Message Reset*

③ Enter the current handset code

All protected messages is deleted. Note that no SMS is deleted on the USIM Card.

Using Phone Number, Email Address & URL

Using selectable phone numbers, email addresses and URLs allows you to add a Phone Book entry, send a message and access the Internet.

■ Phone Book Entry

1 Highlight the phone number or email address on the message window

2 Press (OPTIONS) and select *Anchor to... → Add to PB*

3 Follow the steps in Phone Book entry (p.4-3, p.4-5)

Tip

- New mail address can be added on the registered Phone Book (p.4-5).

■ Phone to, Message to, & Internet Access

1 Follow the steps on the message detail window for using the phone number, email address and URL

To make a voice call or video call

① Select the phone number

② Select *Phone Call* or *Video Call*

To send a message

① Select an email address

② Create a new message (p.16-4)


To send a message using the phone number

① Highlight the phone number and press (OPTIONS)


② Select *Anchor to... → Message to...*

③ Select the mail type and create a message (p.16-4)

To access the Internet

Highlight the URL and press  (👉 p.17-3)

To add the bookmark entry

① Highlight the URL and press  (OPTIONS) to select

Anchor to...

② Select *Add Bookmark* (👉 p.17-9)

Tip


• URL to... operation

Some selected URL (beginning with rtsp://) may start the streaming such as videos, sounds and music. (👉 p.17-8)

Using Attachments

Check Attachments

Display or play the image or sound files attached to the received S! Mail respectively.

1 Highlight attachments on the message detail window and press  (OPTIONS)

2 Select *Show Focus Item*


3 Highlight a file and press 

Tip

- If the contents key is required for playback, save the file in the data folder and follow the operation to obtain the contents key. (👉 p.17-7)

Save in Data Folder

1 Highlight attachments on the message detail window

2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Show Focus Item*

3 Highlight the attachments on the attached list window

4 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Save*

Tip

- For the same file name
Sequential number is automatically added to the file name.

Operation from Message List Window

Sort Messages

The mail list can be sorted by the date and the mail address.

1 Press ()

From the Main Menu

Press and select (Messaging)

2 Select a folder

3 Press (OPTIONS) and select *Sort*

4 Select any item

To arrange by date

Select either *Date* ↑ (ascending) or *Date* ↓ (descending)

To arrange by address

Select either *Address* ↑ (ascending) or *Address* ↓ (descending)

Tip

- If returning to the mail box list window after pressing , the message order returns to the descending order of date.

Checking Delivery Reports

Check Delivery Reports to confirm the delivery of S! Mail or SMS to the other party.

1 Press ()

From the Main Menu

Press and select (Messaging)

2 Select *Sent Messages* and select the message

3 Press (OPTIONS) and select *View Report*

Tip

- *DeliveryReport* of the sent message must be set to *Request* to confirm delivery (see p.16-27).
- Delivery Reports are available only when you send a message to a SoftBank handset and *Send Reports* of the other party is set to "ON".

Message list window options

The following operations are available using option items. Displayed items may vary depending on message status.

- **Inbox/Mail Folders**

Option	Description
Open	Open a highlighted message for view.
Reply	Select reply type.
Forward	Divert a message.
Move	Move a message to the other folder or the USIM Card (SMS only).
Delete Message	Delete highlighted message.
Delete All	Delete all messages.
Select Message	Select multiple messages.
Sort	Rearrange message order by Date or Address .
Filter	List messages by type specified with Show All, Read, Unread, SMS, S! Mail, S! Mail Notification or High Priority .
Unread	Change message status from read to unread.
Read	Change message status from unread to read.
Protection	Prevent a message from being deleted by accident.
Cancel Protection	Unprotect the protected messages.

- **Drafts/Outbox**

Option	Description
Edit	Edit a message.
Delete Message	Delete highlighted message.
Delete All	Delete all messages.
Select Message	Select multiple messages.
Sort	Rearrange message order by Date or Address .
Filter	List messages by type specified with Show All, SMS, S! Mail or High Priority .

- **Sent Messages**

Option	Description
Open	Open the highlighted message for viewing or editing.
Edit	Edit a message.
Move	Move SMS to the USIM Card.
Delete Message	Delete highlighted message.
Delete All	Delete all messages.
Select Message	Select multiple messages.
Sort	Rearrange the message order by Date or Address .
Filter	List messages by type specified with Show All, SMS, S! Mail or High Priority .
View Report	Display the delivered report.
Protection	Prevent the message from being deleted by accident.
Cancel Protection	Unprotect the protected messages.

- **MyFolder**

The following operations are available using option items.


Option	Description
Open	Open a folder.
Rename	Change folder name.
Mail Distribute	Sort received messages by address or phone number and put it into a specified folder automatically.

.....



Using Message List

If a new S! Mail contains more than 129 double-byte characters as text or includes attachments, up to 128 double-byte characters (including address or subject) are delivered and remaining messages are temporarily stored in the mail server of the service center according to either of the following cases. *¹

- No automatic receive setting*²
- No memory spaces in the handset*³
- During a video call
- During packet transmission through external device






*¹ When S! Mail is stored in the service center or there are unread messages,  appears at the top of the window.

*² Set Auto Receive to automatically receive the complete S! Mail (US p.16-26).



*³ If no memory space is available in the handset, notification cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages or files and press   to run **Server Mail** to receive messages.

When the S! Mail list (message list) is retrieved from the mail server, it is possible to receive, delete and forward messages in the server.

Message List Retrieval

- 1 Press  () and select **Server Mail**
From the Main Menu
Press  and select  (Messaging) → **Server Mail**
- 2 Press  (YES) for confirmation

Tip


- **When you have already retrieved the message list**
You do not have to retrieve the message list again in Step 1.
- **To check mail server usage**
Press  (OPTIONS) on the server mail window and select **Server Mail Capacity**. To retrieve the latest information, press  (UPDATE).

Server Mail options

The following options are available.


Option	Description
Forward	Divert messages in the server to another address.
Delete Message	Delete messages from the server (<i>Delete From Server</i>) or from the message list (<i>Delete From List</i>).
Delete All	Delete all messages from both the message list and the server.
Server Mail List	Display messages on the server as a list.
Serv. mail Received	Retrieve text and attachments for messages not received on the handset and stored on the server.
Receive All	Receive all messages on the server.
Select Message	Select multiple messages.
Message Details	Display <i>Date, From, Subject</i> and <i>Size</i> .
Server Mail Capacity	Display the mail server usage.

■ Receiving S! Mail from Message List

- 1 Display the message list
- 2 Highlight an S! Mail or select multiple S! Mail (☞ p.16-14)
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Serv. mail Received*



☞ Tip ☞

- To receive all S! Mail messages from the message list
 - ① Retrieve the message list


- ② Press  (OPTIONS) on *Server Mail* window and select *Receive All*. Even when running *Receive All*, all S! Mail may not be received. In this case, repeat Steps 1 and 2.

■ Deleting S! Mail on the Server Using Message List


An S! Mail that has been deleted from the server cannot be received.

- 1 Display the message list
- 2 Highlight an S! Mail or select multiple S! Mail (☞ p.16-14)
- 3 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete Message*
 - To delete a message and list on the server
Select *Delete From Server*
 - To delete a message from the server message list
Select *Delete From List*
- 4 Press  (YES)

☞ Tip ☞

- To delete an S! Mail on the message list and all messages on the server listed on the message list
 - ① Retrieve the message list
 - ② Press  (OPTIONS) on *Server Mail* window and select *Delete All*

③ Enter the current handset code and press  (OK)

④ Press  (YES)

Even when running *Delete All*, all S! Mail may not be received. In this case, repeat Steps 1 to 4.


Forwarding Messages on the Server

The items displayed by transfer are as follows.

Item	Description
Address	Nothing is entered.
Subject	The subject of the original S! Mail is automatically entered.

1 Display the message list

2 Highlight S! Mail  (OPTIONS) and select *Forward*



3 Enter an address and Press  (SEND)

Common Settings to S! Mail/SMS

■ Scroll

Select the scroll block for the message window.

[Default] Scroll One Line

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *General* → *Scroll Setting*


From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *General* → *Scroll Setting*

2 Select any value

■ Heading Text/Signature

[Default] Not Insert

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *General*




From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *General*

2 Select *Heading Text* or *Signature* as necessary

3 Select *Insert* or *Not Insert*



To select *Insert*

- ① Move down to the input field and press 
- ② Input the heading text, signature and press 
- ③ Press  (OK)

Font Size

Select the font size for the message window.

[Default] Medium

- 1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *General* → *Font Size*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *General* → *Font Size*

- 2 Select the font size



S! Mail Settings

Auto Receive

Set to receive the complete S! Mails automatically. If you do not receive them automatically, you will receive a part of the messages when you are in Japan (Home), or you will receive only reception notifications when you are performing Global Roaming.

Set normal reception in Japan or roaming reception.

[Default] Home: Manual
 Roaming: Manual

- 1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Receive Opt.* → *Auto Receive*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Receive Opt.* → *Auto Receive*

- 2 Click the box for *Home* or *Roaming*



For no automatic reception

Clear the box.

Automatic Play

Set auto play when opening message if images, sounds or slides is attached to the received message.

[Default] Image: On
 Sound: Off
 Slide: On

- 1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Receive Opt.* → *Automatic Play*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Receive Opt.* → *Automatic Play*

- 2 Click the box for *Image, Sound or Slide*

For no auto play

Clear the box.

Creation Mode

Set the file attachment for non-S! Mail-standard and restrictions of additional files.

[Default] Free

Create mode	Attached file
Restricted	Only S! Mail standard files can be attached or added.
Free	Both S! Mail-standard and non-S! Mail-standard files can be attached or added.

1 Press () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Creation Mode*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Creation Mode*

2 Select any value

Tip

- **S! Mail-standard files**

JPEG, GIF, WBMP, 3GPP (voice AMR), vCalendar and vCard.

Delivery Report

Set request for the arrival confirmation when S! Mail is sent.

[Default] Not Request

1 Press () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *DeliveryReport*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *DeliveryReport*

2 Select any value



Tip

- Reports can be checked only when you send a message to a SoftBank handset and *Send Reports* of the other party is set to "ON".
- *DeliveryReport* can be set in *Send Option* menu on the new message window (☰ p.16-10).

Send Reports

Set message report delivery when you receive S! Mail with delivery confirmation.

[Default] Send Reports

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Send Reports*

From the Main Menu



Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Send Reports*

2 Select any value

Validity Period

Set the storage time of the sent S! Mail on the mail server. Messages are deleted after the set time elapses.

[Default] No Delete

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Validity Period*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Validity Period*

2 Select any value

Tip



- The validity period can be set in *Send Option* menu on the new message window (☞ p.16-10).

- For Validity Period, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Delivery Time

Set the time period until S! Mail is sent. S! Mail is stored on the mail server until the set time elapses.

[Default] Delivery Now

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Delivery Time*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *S! Mail Settings* → *Delivery Time*

2 Select any value

Tip

- The delivery time can be set in *Send Option* menu on the new message window (☞ p.16-10).

SMS Settings

SMS Report Request

Set request for the arrival confirmation when SMS is sent.

[Default] Not Request

- 1 Press () and select *Settings* → *SMS Settings* → *SMSReportReq*.

From the Main Menu

Press and select (Messaging) → *Settings* → *SMS Settings* → *SMSReportReq*.

- 2 Select any value

Tip

- Reports can be checked only when you send a message to a SoftBank handset and *Send Reports* of the other party is set to "ON".
- *Delivery Report* can be set in *Send Option* menu on *Unread msgs* only the new message window (p.16-10).

Validity Period

[Default] No Delete

- 1 Press () and select *Settings* → *SMS Settings* → *Validity Period*

From the Main Menu

Press and select (Messaging) → *Settings* → *SMS Settings* → *Validity Period*

- 2 Select any value

Tip

- The validity period can be set in *Send Option* menu on the new message window (p.16-10).
- For *Validity Period*, contact Customer Service (p.19-43).

SMS Center


Change the number for the SMS message center. Do not change this number unless SoftBank tells you the number is changed. If this number is accidentally changed, SMS cannot be received. The SMS message center number is registered on your USIM Card. Note that it is not possible to revert to default setting.

[Default] +819066519300

- 1 Press () and select *Settings* → *SMS Settings* → *SMS Centre*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *SMS Settings* → *SMS Centre*



2 Press  and enter the SMS message center number

3 Press  and  (OK)

3D Pictogram Settings

Certain characters, pictograms and face symbols in the message body appear in 3D animation up to 150 characters. 3D pictogram and colour are available for setting.

[Default] 3D Pictogram: Unread msgs only
 Colour Settings: White

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *General* → *3D Pict. Set.*




From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *General* → *3D Pict. Set.*

2 Select *3D Pictogram* or *Colour Settings*


3 Select any value



Tip

- To display 3D Pictogram for the read messages in *Unread msgs only* or *Off settings*
Select  (OPTIONS) on the message window → *3D Pictogram*
- Operations while displaying 3D Pictogram ( p.16-13)
- To send a message to the 3D Pictogram-compatible device
Check how to display at the other party by pressing  (OPTIONS) on the message window before sending and selecting *3D Pictogram*.
Also check 3D Pictogram in Sent Messages/Drafts/Outbox.
- 3D Pictogram cannot be displayed for slides, an SMS without text/ S! Mail, and S! Mail report.

Reset Settings


Settings Reset

Initialize message settings or the user folder name, and delete all messages stored in the mail box ( p.19-10).

1 Press  () and select *Settings* → *Settings Reset*

From the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Messaging) → *Settings* → *Settings Reset*

2 Enter the security code and press  (OK)

3 Press  (YES)

 Note

- Settings for the SMS message center SMS cannot be initialized even after resetting.


Web

Web

Access a wide variety of contents and view pages or download picture and sound files to your SoftBank handset.


- * Separate subscription is required to use Web.
- * Access Web services from the **Yahoo! Keitai** menu.

Tip

- **For information on connection fees**
Contact Customer Service ( p.19-43).

Before Using the Web

SSL/TLS

SSL(Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS(Transport Layer Security) are protocols for transmission of encrypted data. While in SSL/TLS connection, data are encrypted and transmitted, to send or receive private information, credit card numbers or business secrets safely, preventing interception, alteration or spoofing on the internet. The handset incorporates electronic certificates (Root Certificates) issued by certification authorities by default. The contents of certificates can be viewed ( p.17-15).

.....

Notes on using SSL/TLS

You are solely responsible for use of SSL/TLS on a secured site for your intended application and use.

Subject to the terms of any agreement between you and SoftBank, the licensors VeriSign, Betrusted Japan, Entrust Japan GeoTrust JAPAN, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Net shall not be liable for any direct, indirect, special consequential, incidental, or punitive damages of any kind whatsoever with respect to the use of SSL/TLS.

.....

Cache (Temporary Memory)

Information obtained via the Web is saved in a temporary memory (cache). Information saved in the cache will not be deleted when leaving the Web or turning the handset off. However, oldest information is overwritten automatically after the pre-defined space becomes full. When information expires, it is deleted from the cache automatically.

To empty the cache manually, perform **Clear Cache**.

If a previously viewed Web page is opened, the copy of the page saved in the cache may be opened instead of the Web page through the Service Center.

Accessing the Web

A separate subscription is required to use Web services.





■ Yahoo! Keitai Menu

1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai)

■ Yahoo! Keitai Menu

Item	Description
Yahoo! Keitai	Access the Yahoo! Keitai main menu to access a variety of Mobile Internet sites (Most sites are available only in Japanese).
Bookmarks	Bookmark websites for quick access.
Enter URL	Enter URLs to directly access Mobile Internet sites.
History	Display access histories.
Saved Pages	Display saved pages off-line.
Browser Set.	Customize Browser Set. settings such as Display, sound and communication.



■ Accessing Mobile Internet Sites

1 Press  () , or press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Yahoo! Keitai*


2 Select an item


Tip

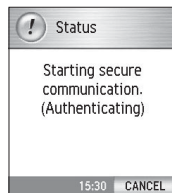
- To access the Yahoo! Keitai menu from the Main Menu

Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Yahoo! Keitai*

- Accessing a protected Web page

A confirmation appears when you attempt to access a Web page protected with SSL/TLS. To cancel, press  (CANCEL).

 appears on a Web page protected with SSL/TLS.



■ Entering a URL


Enter a URL to access a Web page.

The URL of the accessed page is logged in *History*.

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Enter URL*
- 2 Select the *Internet Address (URL)* field and press 
- 3 Enter a URL and press 

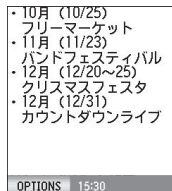
4 Press (OK)







Tip

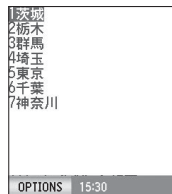
- To move to another site by entering its URL on a Web page
Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Enter URL**.

Navigating a Web Page

Use the following keys to navigate a Web page:



- : Move cursor or scroll a window.
- : Move cursor to an item below.
- : Move cursor to an item above.
- Side keys  and : Scroll a window.
- : Return to a previous window or stop melody playback.





Web Page options

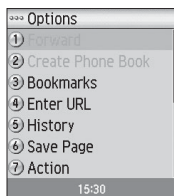
The following menu is available from a Web page:

Menu item	Description
Forward	View a previously-opened page again without reloading it (When information display follows).
Create Phone Book	Save a phone number of mail address in a Web page in Phone Book.
Bookmarks	Save a URL of or linked to a Web page as a bookmark, or select a saved bookmark to access the site.
Enter URL	Enter a URL to access the site.
History	Open the access history.
Save Page	Save a Web page.
Action	Search or copy text, save or play an image or melody on a Web page.
Send As Message	Attach a URL of a Web page or image, or image file to a message to send.
Refresh	Refresh the displayed Web page.

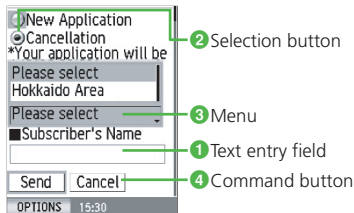
Menu item	Description
Page Setting	Set the character encoding, scrolling or font size. In addition, view the certificate authenticated in the displayed Web page or the page information.
Browser Set.	Perform Browser settings such as security and downloading image and sound.

In the OPTION menu of a Web page, select items by performing either of following:


- Use  to highlight an item and press .
- Press a dial key corresponding to the number set to an item.






■ Entering Text/Selecting Items




1 Text entry field

Move cursor to and press  to enter text.

2 Selection button

Move cursor to  (radio button) and press  to select the button ().

3 Menu

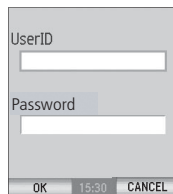
Move cursor to a menu item and press  to select the item.

4 Command button

Move cursor to and press  to send data or cancel.

■ Authentication

Some Web pages require authentication. If authentication is required, select text entry fields to enter your user ID and password.



■ Uploading Files

Perform the following to upload a file saved on the handset (except for non-transferable files):

- 1 Select a command button such as *Browse* on a Web page
- 2 Select a file from data folders
- 3 Press a command button such as *Send*

■ Using Links from Web Pages

Use phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs included in Web pages to make calls, create an S! Mail or access the Web.

Available phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs are underlined.

- 1 Open a Web page
- 2 Select a phone number, mail address or URL to perform the desired operation

To make a voice or video call

- ① Select a phone number
- ② Make a voice or video call (☎ p.2-2, p.5-2)

* Press (☒) to select whether to show your caller ID.

To save a phone number in Phone Book

- ① Select a phone number
- ② Select *Create Phone Book* (☎ p.4-2)

To create S! Mail

- ① Select a mail address
- ② Create S! Mail to send (☎ p.16-4)

To access the Web

Select a URL (☎ p.17-3)

◀ Note ▶

- To make a video call to a phone number on a Web page, save the page and open it from *Saved Pages*.

Using Pictures


Save picture files embedded on a Web page to Data Folder. Use stored files as wallpaper, etc.

■ Saving Files to Data Folder

- 1 Open a Web page
- 2 Press (☒) (OPTIONS) and select *Action* → *Object*
- 3 Select a picture


- 4 Select *Save*
- 5 Press  (OK)

Tip


- To change a file name or destination to be saved
Press  (MODIFY) on Step 5.

Using Melodies



■ Playing Melodies

- 1 Open a Web page
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Action* → *Object*
- 3 Select a melody file
- 4 Select *Play*

Tip

- **Melodies are played**
When *Sounds* in *Browser Set.* is set *Play* ( p.17-13), at the volume set under *Ringtone Volume* in *Sound / Mode.* In Manner mode, the Manner mode settings take priority. The volume cannot be adjusted during playback on the Web.

■ Saving Melodies to Data Folder

- 1 Open a Web page
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Action* → *Object*
- 3 Select a melody file
- 4 Select *Save*
- 5 Press  (OK)

Using Other Files

■ Using Data with Content Key

Download copyrighted content and obtain the content key. This content key is required to play the file.

Tip

- Some contents can be downloaded by clicking a link on a Web page.
- If you attempt to play a file for which you have not obtained the content key, a message appears prompting you to obtain the key.
- The content key may not be obtained during data download, but received later. In this case, the content key indicator appears in Standby.

- If there is no available space in the handset memory and messages cannot be received, content keys cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages before retrieving content keys.

■ Using Streaming

Some videos, voices or melodies can be played during download (streaming content).

1 Select a data to play on a Web page

☺ Tip ☺

- Media Player automatically launches (☺ p.9-7).
- If a message or other text contains a string (URL) of single-byte alphanumeric characters starting with *rtsp://*, using the URL (☺ p.16-19) may start streaming.
- Even if playback is interrupted, communications continue and packet communications charges will apply.

Saved Pages/Bookmarks

Save often-used Web pages or URLs as *Saved Pages* or *Bookmarks*, to easily access them later.

Function	Details
Saved pages	Pages themselves are saved. Communication will not take place when viewing the information. Save Web pages instead of taking notes.
Bookmarks	The URL of the Web page is saved. Communication is necessary to view the information.

■ Saved Pages

■ Saving Pages

Saving a page you want to view later provides easy access to the page. Pages themselves are saved, and communication will not take place when viewing. Up to 100 pages can be saved.



1 Open a Web page

2 Press (OPTIONS) and select *Save Page*


☺ Tip ☺

- If the number of saved pages has already reached the limit
Delete saved pages to save new pages.

■ Viewing Saved Pages




- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Saved Pages*
- 2 Select a saved page

☺ Tip ☹

- **To check the title or URL of a saved page**
 - ① While the page is opened, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Page Setting* → *Page Information*
 - ② Select an option
- **Operations available in Saved pages window**
Operations same as when displaying a Web page (p.17-4) are available. However, displayed options may vary depending on the situation.

■ Editing Titles

Edit the titles of saved pages.


- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Saved Pages*
- 2 Select a saved page, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Edit Title*
- 3 Edit the title

■ Deleting Saved Pages




- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Saved Pages*
- 2 Delete

To delete one by one

- ① Select a saved page, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete*

- ② Press  (YES)


To delete all pages

- ① Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete All*
- ② Press  (YES) and enter the Security Code
- ③ Press  (OK)

■ Bookmarks

■ Bookmarking

Bookmark often-used URLs to easily access them later. Up to 100 bookmarks can be saved.

- 1 Open a Web page
- 2 Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Bookmarks*
- 3 Select *Current Page*

Tip

- If the number of saved pages has already reached the limit
Delete saved bookmarks to save new bookmarks.
- To bookmark a link on a page
 - ① Perform Step 1
 - ② Move the cursor over an underlined link
 - ③ Perform Step 2
 - ④ Select *Selected Link*

Accessing Bookmarks


1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) →
Bookmarks



2 Select a bookmark

Editing Content

Edit the titles or URLs of saved bookmarks.

1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) →
Bookmarks

2 Highlight a bookmark, press  (OPTIONS) and
select *Edit*

3 Use  to select *Edit Title* or *Edit URL*, and press
 to edit the title or URL


4 Press  then  (OK)


Deleting Bookmarks

1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) →
Bookmarks


2 Delete


To delete one by one


① Highlight a bookmark, press  (OPTIONS) and select
Delete

② Press  (YES)

To delete all bookmarks

① Press  (OPTIONS) and select *Delete All*

② Press  (YES) and enter the Security Code

③ Press  (OK)

Bookmark list options

The following options are available for bookmark list:

Option	Description
Send As Message	Paste the URL into a message.
Add To Desktop	Create a shortcut to the bookmark on the desktop.
Add To My Menu	Add a bookmark to My Menu.


History

Up to the last 300 accessed URLs are added to **History**. Easily access previously-viewed pages from the **History**.

1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → **History**

2 Perform log operation




To access pages

- 1 Select a log
- 2 Press  (OK)

To delete one by one

- 1 Highlight a log, press  (OPTIONS) and select **Delete**
- 2 Press  (YES)

To delete all logs

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) and select **Delete All**
- 2 Press  (YES) and enter the Security Code
- 3 Press  (OK)

.....

■ History options

The following option is available for **History**:


- **Send As Message:** Paste the URL into a message.
-

Other Settings

■ Changing Character Code

If characters are not properly displayed, change the code.

[Default] Shift-JIS


1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select **Page Setting** → **Encoding**

2 Select a code

■ Changing Font Size

Select font size in a web page.

[Default] Medium


1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select **Page Setting** → **Font Size**

2 Select an option

■ Changing Scroll Settings

Select scroll line in a web page.


[Default] Scroll One Line

1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select *Page Setting* → *Scroll Settings*

2 Select an option


■ Updating a Page

Update a page. Some pages may not be updated.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select *Refresh*

■ Searching for a Word on a Page




Search for a word on a page. If it is found, it will be highlighted.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a web page and select *Action* → *Search In Page*

2 Enter a word and press 


3 Press  (SEARCH)

☾ Tip ☽


- To search for the word repeatedly
 - ① Perform Step 1, 2 and 3
 - ② Press  (SEARCH).
SEARCH appears in the Softkey area  until the search is canceled.
- To cancel the search
Press 

■ Copying Text on a Page

Copy text on a page to paste somewhere else.


1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select *Action* → *Copy as Text*

2 Text entry window appears

3 Copy text ( p.3-19)

■ Viewing Page Information


Check the URL or title of the page.

1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select *Page Setting* → *Page Information*


2 Select *Check URL* or *Check Page Title*

■ Creating a Message with a URL or Picture

Send a message with the page URL, a picture's URL or the picture itself.


- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select *Send As Message*
- 2 Select *Current Page URL*, *Image URL* or *Image File*
If selecting *Image URL* or *Image File*, select the image.
- 3 Select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and create a message

☺ Tip ☹

- **To send a message**
The URL of the Web page is automatically entered in the message text. Create the message by entering the destination and others, then send the message ( p.16-4).
- **The message type window does not appear when the number of characters included in the URL exceeds the limit to be sent by SMS, or when an image is selected.**

■ Checking Server Certificate

Check server certificates used for SSL/TLS communications.

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a Web page and select *Page Setting* → *Page Information*
- 2 Select *Server Certificate*

☺ Tip ☹


- **Server certificate**
The Certificate to certify the validity of the server performing SSL/TLS communication.
- **Use multiple server certificates**
It is possible to refer to other server certificates by using  while displaying the server certificates.

Image Display/Sound Playback Settings

Set whether to display images or play sounds contained in the content.

- [Default] Images: Display
 Sounds: Play

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set.*

2 Select an option and set

To set image display

- ① Select *Display Set*.
- ② Select *Images*
- ③ Select *Display* or *Do Not Display*

To set sound playback

- ① Select *Sounds*
- ② Select *Play* or *Do Not Play*

Tip

- **Browser Set.**

Can also be selected by pressing  (OPTIONS) while displaying content.

- **To set whether to save images to Saved Pages**

[Default] Save With Images

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Select *Display Set*. → *SavedPageOpt*.
- ③ Select an option

Security Settings

Setting Cookies

Cookies are small data files automatically written to the handset and used by information providers to identify users. Set whether to save *Cookies*. Cookies can be deleted.

[Default] Accept All

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set*. → *COMMS*Settings → *Cookie Set*.

2 Select an option and set

To set whether to save Cookies

- ① Select *Cookies*
- ② Select an option

To delete all Cookies

- ① Select *Clear Cookies*
- ② Select  (YES)

■ Manufacture Number Notification

The **Manufacture Number** is not a phone number but an ID to identify a user. The **Manufacture Number** may be required to be notified for some information. Set whether to comply with the notification request.

[Default] Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set.* → *Manufacture #*
- 2 Select *On* or *Off*

■ Checking Root Certificates

Check the preinstalled **Root Certificates**.

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set.* → *Root Certif.*
- 2 Select a certificate

◀ Tip ▶

- To switch between Valid and Invalid

[Default] Valid

- ① Perform Step 1
- ② Highlight a certificate, press  (OPTIONS), and select **Valid** or **Invalid**

- **Root Certificate**
Verifies the server certificate.




Setting Location Information from a Website

Make the settings for retrieving location information from a Website.

■ Setting LBS Lock

Set whether to activate the LBS.



[Default] Off

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Connectivity* → *LBS Lock*
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select *On* or *Off* and press 

Setting Whether to Send Location Information

Set whether to send the location information automatically when receiving the location information request while downloading data.

[Default] Prompt Each Time

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set.* → *Location Info.*
- 2 Enter Security Code
- 3 Select an option and set





Tip

- Options for setting in *Location Info.*
 - **Prompt Each Time:** Display the confirmation window every time.
 - **Send:** Send location information without displaying the confirmation window.
 - **Not Send:** The confirmation window does not appear and location information is not sent.

Resetting Browser Settings



Resetting Settings to Default

Reset *Saved Pages*, *History* or *Browser Set.* to default (☞ p.19-8).

- 1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set.* → *Reset*
- 2 Select an option to reset
 - To reset settings only
 - ① Select *Reset Settings*
 - ② Press  (YES)
 - To reset settings and data
 - ① Select *Memory Reset*
 - ② Enter the Security Code
 - ③ Press  (OK)

Clearing the Access History


Web access is stored. Clear *History*.

- 1 Press  (OPTIONS) on a web page and select *Browser Set.* → *History Clear*
- 2 Press  (YES)

3 Enter Security Code

4 Press  (OK)

 Note

- *History Clear* does not clear the access list ( p.17-11).


■ Clearing the Cache

Delete all data temporarily stored in the cache ( p.17-2).

1 Press  and select  (Yahoo! Keitai) → *Browser Set.* → *COMMS settings* → *Clear Cache*

2 Press  (YES)

 Note

- Inserting another USIM Card will erase the cache ( p.1-6).

S! Appli

S! Appli

S! Appli are Java™ applications exclusively for SoftBank handsets.

S! Appli can be downloaded from websites.

The following S! Appli is preinstalled in handset.

- gameloft Mega Hits
- * Additional fees are required when downloading S! Appli from websites or using a network-connected type.

Tip

- **For information on connection fees**
Contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).

Network-type S! Appli






Some S! Appli run on the network (web). Connection fees are applied for using network-type S! Appli. A confirmation message appears when you try to connect to the network. Change confirmation message settings (☎ p.18-5).

To check Java™ and JBlend™ licenses


Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *Java™ Info*.

Downloading S! Appli





Download S! Appli from websites. Up to 100 S! Appli can be saved.

- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli Library* → *Download S! Appli*
- 2 Access a website that provides S! Appli
- 3 Select S! Appli
- 4 Press  (DL) in confirmation window
- 5 Press  (DL)
- 6 Press  (BACK)

To launch S! Appli immediately

Press  (LAUNCH) to open S! Appli Library


Tip

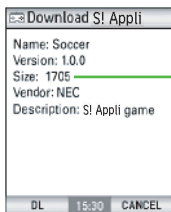
- **To upgrade S! Appli**
If you attempt to download an upgrade version of stored S! Appli, a confirmation message appears. Press  (REPLACE) to overwrite the older version.
- **To cancel the download**
Press  (CANCEL) or  (CLEAR BACK).
- **To check the memory status**
Press  and select  (Settings) → *Memory Set.* → *Status*.

Note

- S! Appli cannot be downloaded if:
 - The file is invalid
 - The size is too large
 - The number of S! Appli will exceed the limit
 - The memory is low
 - It cannot be saved
- Downloading may fail if battery power is low. Make sure battery has sufficient power before downloading the application.
- Replacing the USIM Card prevents you from using the downloaded S! Appli.


Download confirmation window

When you select S! Appli to download on the website, a confirmation window appears for you to check the size. The signature information can also be checked for network-type S! Appli. To cancel the download, press  (CANCEL).



Data size in downloading from Websites.










Launching S! Appli




When launching S! Appli,  appears on Display.

1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → S! Appli Library

2 Select S! Appli

Tip


- **Accessing S! Appli saved to a memory card**
After performing Step 1, press  (Options) and select **Change Memory Card**. To switch from the memory card to the handset, press  (Options) and select **Change Phone Memory**.
- **S! Appli Library indicator**
: Preinstalled at purchase
: Downloaded
- **To launch S! Appli from Data Folder**
 - 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder) → S! Appli
 - 2 Select S! Appli
- **To create a shortcut to S! Appli Library**
 - 1 Press  and select  (Data Folder)
 - 2 Highlight S! Appli, press  (OPTIONS) and select **Shortcut**
 - 3 Select **Add To Desktop** or **Add To My Menu**

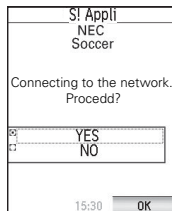
- To confirm property of S! Appli
 - ① Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli library*
 - ② Highlight S! Appli, press  (OPTIONS) and select *Properties*
- To access S! Appli link
Select *To Web* in property window

Note

- S! Appli may not be activated when there is not enough space in Data Folder.

A window appears when launching S! Appli


If the S! Appli is a network type, a message appears. To continue using S! Appli, select **YES**. The confirmation window type can be changed in the security level settings ( p.18-5).



When connecting to the Internet

Ending/Pausing/Resuming S! Appli

Ending/Pausing S! Appli

- 1 Press  while S! Appli is running
- 2 Select an option
 - To pause S! Appli
Select *Pause*
 - To end S! Appli
Select *End*

Resuming Paused S! Appli

If S! Appli is paused,  appears on Display.

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds
- 2 Select S! Appli

Managing S! Appli


■ Moving S! Appli

Exchange S! Appli between the handset and the memory card.

- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli Library*

To open S! Appli Library on the memory card

Press  (Options) and select *Change Memory Card*





- 2 Highlight S! Appli, press  (Options) and select *Change Entry (Move)*

- 3 Press  (YES)

☰ Tip

- If the S! Appli cannot be transferred *Change Entry (Move)* does not appear.

■ Deleting S! Appli

- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli Library*
- 2 Highlight S! Appli, press  (Options) and select *Delete*
- 3 Press  (YES)




☰ Note

- S! Appli preinstalled at purchase cannot be moved or deleted.


■ Setting Security Levels

Some S! Appli require network connection. Confirmation message appears before network connection. Select from four settings for confirmation message.

[Default] Prompt At Startup





- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli Library*
- 2 Highlight S! Appli, press  (Options) and select *Security*
- 3 Select *Net Access* then an option

Tip

- **Security options**
 - **Prompt At First Only:** A confirmation appears only the first time the S! Appli is launched.
 - **Prompt At Startup:** A confirmation appears each time the S! Appli is launched.
 - **Prompt Each Time:** A confirmation appears each time the connection function is used.
 - **Disable:** The function is disabled.
- Pressing  (OPTIONS) does not display *Security* when using S! Appli which does not connect to the network.

Resetting Security Levels

Reset security settings to default.


- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli Library*
- 2 Highlight S! Appli, press  (Options) and select *Security*
- 3 Select *Setting Reset*
- 4 Press  (YES)

S! Appli Settings




Incoming Settings

Set incoming or alarm settings for S! Appli.

[Default] Call Priority

- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → *S! Appli Set.* → *Incoming Call*
- 2 Select *Call Priority or Alert Display*

.....
 ■ When a call is incoming or the alarm time has come during S! Appli running



- **Call Priority is selected**
S! Appli is paused, and the phone rings or the alarm sounds.
 - **Alert Display is selected**
When *Alert Display* is set
The S! Appli continues running, and a message appears at the top of the display indicating that a call is incoming or the alarm time has come. To answer an incoming call, press . Answering a call pauses S! Appli and it comes back after ending the call.
To end S! Appli before answering an incoming call, press , select *End* and press .
-

■ Adjusting Volume

Adjust the volume of sound effects.

[Default] Level 4

1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → S! Appli Set. → Vol./Vibr. → Volume

2 Use  to adjust the volume, and press 

Tip

- In manner mode
The manner mode settings take priority over S! Appli settings.

■ Setting Vibration

Enable or disable the vibration set for S! Appli.

[Default] On

1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → S! Appli Set. → Vol./Vibr. → Vibration

2 Select *On* or *Off*

Tip

- In manner mode
The manner mode settings take priority over S! Appli settings.

■ Backlight Settings

Select from the following backlight settings for S! Appli.

Option	Description
Always On	Backlight always on.
Always Off	Backlight off. Backlight does not illuminate even when a key is pressed.
Link To Backlight	Backlight illuminates when you press a key.

Enable or disable *S! Appli Blink* for S! Appli.

[Default] Backlight Set.: Link To Backlight
 S! Appli Blink: On

1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → S! Appli Set. → Light Settings

2 Select an option

To make light settings

- ① Select *Backlight Set.*
- ② Select an option

To make blink settings

- ① Select *S! Appli Blink*
- ② Select *On* or *Off*





Resetting S! Appli Settings

Resetting S! Appli Settings to Default

18





S! Appli

Reset S! Appli settings to default

- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → S! Appli Set. → Reset S! Appli → Reset Settings
- 2 Enter Security Code and press  (OK)
- 3 Press  (YES)



Deleting All S! Appli



Delete all downloaded S! Appli stored in S! Appli Library ( p.19-8).



- 1 Press  and select  (S! Appli) → S! Appli Set. → Reset S! Appli → Memory Reset
- 2 Enter Security Code and press  (OK)
- 3 Press  (YES)



Appendix



Features


Main	Sub	Branch	Description	Page
 S! Appli	S! Appli Library		Use stored S! Appli programs.	p.18-3
	S! Appli Set.	Incoming Call	Set the incoming or alarm operations for S! Appli.	p.18-6
		Vol./Vibr.	Set the volume or vibrator for S! Appli.	p.18-7
		Light Settings	Make light settings for S! Appli.	p.18-7
		Reset S! Appli	Reset S! Appli settings.	p.18-8
	Java™ Info.		View Java™ and JBlend™ licenses.	p.18-2
 Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai		Offer a variety of websites and services for SoftBank handsets (Mainly in Japanese).	p.17-3
	Bookmarks		Access bookmarked websites.	p.17-9
	Enter URL		Access websites by manually entering URLs.	p.17-3
	History		Display access logs.	p.17-11
	Saved Pages		Display saved pages off-line.	p.17-11
	Browser Set.	Display Set.	Set display.	p.17-13
		Sounds	Set sound.	p.17-13
		COMMSettings	Set cookies or clear cache.	p.17-14
		Root Certif.	View the certificate list in the handset and set valid/invalid.	p.17-14
		Manufacture #	Set whether to answer the Manufacture Number request when using the Internet.	p.17-15
Location Info.		Set whether to send the location automatically when receiving the location request while downloading data.	p.17-16	
History Clear		Delete the logs.	p.17-16	
Reset		Reset the browser settings to default.	p.17-16	

Main	Sub	Branch	Description	Page
 Entertainment	Music Player	AllTracks	Play all tracks.	p.9-4
		Playlists	Play a playlist.	p.9-6
		MyMusic	Select a folder to play tracks.	p.9-4
		Recent.Played	Play the most recently played track.	p.9-4
		Most Played	Play the most often played track.	p.9-4
		Download	Download tracks from websites.	p.9-4
		Ringtones	Play melodies.	p.9-4
	Media Player	Pictures	View pictures.	p.9-8
		Videos	Play videos.	p.9-11
		Media Settings	Set Media Player.	p.9-14
	CAST	What's New?	View the latest information.	p.9-15
		History	View previously-downloaded contents.	p.9-15
		Casting Set.	Subscribe/unsubscribe contents.	p.9-15
		Manual DL	Download contents manually.	p.9-15
		Weather Icon	Check weather report and set weather icon.	p.9-16
S! Loop			Access S! Loop menu.	p.9-18
 Camera	Camera		Launch the camera.	p.6-4
	Video		Launch the video.	p.6-6
	BarCodeReader		Launch the bar code reader.	p.6-8

Main	Sub	Branch	Description	Page	
 Data Folder	Pictures		Store pictures.	p.10-2	
	Ringtones		Store downloaded ringtones.	p.10-2	
	S! Appli		Store downloaded S! Appli.	p.10-2	
	Music		Store music files.	p.10-2	
	Videos		Store videos.	p.10-2	
	Other Folders		Store vFiles.	p.10-2	
			Voice Rec.	Store voices recorded by Voice Recorder.	p.10-2
		More Folder	Store other files.	p.10-2	
 Messaging	Inbox		Received messages are saved here.	p.16-11	
	CreateMessage		Create a new message.	p.16-4	
	Outbox		Unsent, returned or canceled messages are saved here.	p.16-11	
	Drafts		Unsent draft messages are saved here.	p.16-11	
	Sent Messages		Sent messages are saved here.	p.16-11	
	MyFolder		Filtered messages are saved here.	p.16-11	
	Server Mail		Retrieve, delete or forward messages stored on the mail server.	p.16-23	
	Settings	General		Customize the display style, heading text/signature/quote, etc. for S! Mail and SMS.	p.16-25
		S! Mail Settings		Set the auto receive function, delivery time, etc. for S! Mail.	p.16-26
		SMS Settings		Set the report request, validity period and center address for SMS.	p.16-29
Settings Reset		Reset Messaging Settings to default.	p.16-30		

Main	Sub	Branch	Description	Page
 Organiser & Tools	Calendar		Set appointments, events or holidays.	p.13-2
	Alarms		Set alarm clock.	p.13-5
	Tasks		Manage schedules.	p.13-7
	Calc./Converter		Calculate or converts currencies.	p.13-9
	Notepad		Make a note.	p.13-11
	Answer Phone	Play	Play answer phone recorded data.	p.13-13
		Settings	Set answer phone.	p.13-12
	Voice Recorder	Call Memo	Play voice memos recorded during calls.	p.2-9
		Std.ByV.Memo	Record voice memos in standby mode and play them.	p.13-14
Own Dictionary		Register a reading and its word to enter the word simply by entering the reading.	p.3-11	
 Phone Book	Create New		Create an entry or settings for incoming items.	p.4-3
	Search PhBk	Reading	Search Phone Book.	p.4-6
		Name		
		Number		
		Mail Address		
		Groups		
	Manage PhBk	Copy All	Copy the entire Phone Book.	p.4-9
		Move All	Move the entire Phone Book.	p.4-9
		Delete All	Delete the entire Phone Book.	p.4-10
	Other Numbers	Services	Register the service number stored on the USIM Card.	p.4-9
		Rejected	Register a phone number to reject.	p.4-4
Fixed(FDN)		Register a phone number that can be dialed.	p.4-4	

Main	Sub	Branch	Description	Page	
 Phone Book	Settings	Memory Status	Set Phone Book.	p.4-5	
		PrivacyDisplay		p.12-7	
		Owner Info.		p.2-12	
		Speed Dialling		p.2-5	
	Call Log	Dialled Calls	View call logs.	p.2-4	
		Received Calls			
		Missed Calls			
		ClearAllLogs	Set call logs.		p.2-4
		Auto Delete			
		Dupli.Records			
 Settings	Sound / Mode		Set the Normal/Meeting/Outdoor/Drive/Manner mode.	p.8-2	
	Display Set.	Internal Disp.	Set Display.	p.7-2	
		ExternalDisplay	Set External Display.	p.7-3	
		Font Type	Set screen font.	p.7-8	
		Large Font Set	Set large font.	p.7-8	
	Call Settings	Common Set.	Make common settings for calling.	p.2-8, p.4-4, p.14-2	
		Voice Call	Set Voice Call.	p.2-2, p.2-5, p.2-6, p.14-2	

Main	Sub	Branch	Description	Page
 Settings	Call Settings	Video Call	Set Video Call.	p.5-4
		All Calls	Make incoming and outgoing settings.	p.2-8, p.12-5, p.15-9
	Phone Settings	言語選択	Switch between Japanese and English.	p.1-23
		Date & Time	Set date and time.	p.1-21
		Master Reset	Reset settings to default.	p.12-9
	Security	Key Locks	Lock keys to prevent you from pressing them.	p.12-8
		Dial Locks	Lock the handset with Security Code to prevent others from using it without your consent.	p.12-4
		Set Sec. Codes	Set Security Codes.	p.12-2
	Connectivity	Bluetooth	Set Bluetooth.	p.11-3
		Network Setup	Set network.	p.2-13, p.15-10
		LBS Lock	Set whether to activate the LBS.	p.17-15
	Memory Set.	Status	View details of memory capacity.	p.10-11
		Memory Card	Set memory card.	p.10-11
	Update	Update	Update software.	p.19-15
		Update Result	Check update result.	p.19-16

Settings to Be Reset

19

Appendix

Main menu	Settings initialized by <i>All Reset</i>	
	Settings initialized by <i>Settings Reset</i>	Settings initialized by <i>Memory Reset</i>
S! Appli	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Net Access · Incoming Call · Vol./Vibr. · Light Settings <p style="text-align: right;">*1</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Downloaded S! Appli <p style="text-align: right;">*2</p>
Yahoo! Keitai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Scroll settings · Font Size <Browser Set.> · Display Set. · Sounds · COMMS settings · Root Certif. · Manufacture # · Location Info. <p style="text-align: right;">*3 *4</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Bookmarks · Saved Pages · History · Cache · Cookie <p style="text-align: right;">*4</p>
Entertainment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Music Player> · Sort · Music Settings <Media Player> · Image Settings · Video Settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Music Player> · Recent Played · Most Played · Download

Main menu	Settings initialized by <i>All Reset</i>	
	Settings initialized by <i>Settings Reset</i>	Settings initialized by <i>Memory Reset</i>
Entertainment	<CAST> · Scroll Settings · Font Size · Images · Sounds	<CAST> · CAST Information
Camera	<Camera> · Display Settings · Picture Quality · White Balance · Night Mode On (Night Mode Off) · Auto Timer · Display Settings under Camera Settings · Shutter Sound under Camera Settings · Image Tuning under Camera Settings <Video> · Picture Quality · White Balance · Night Mode On (Night Mode Off) · Sound Settings · File Size Limit under Camera Settings · Display Settings under Camera Settings · Shutter Sound under Camera Settings · Image Tuning under Camera Settings	<BarCodeReader> · Stored data

Main menu	Settings initialized by <i>All Reset</i>	
	Settings initialized by <i>Settings Reset</i>	Settings initialized by <i>Memory Reset</i>
Data Folder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Sort Files · Thumbnails · Auto Save 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · All data stored in Data Folder · Auto Save
Messaging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Mail Distribute · MyFolder names <General> · Scroll Setting · Heading Text · Signature · QuoteIndicator · Font Size · 3D pict. Set. <S! Mail Settings> · Receive Opt. · Creation Mode · DeliveryReport · Send Reports · Validity Period · Delivery Time <SMS Settings> · SMSReportReq. <p style="text-align: right;">*5</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Messages*6
Organiser & Tools	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Calendar display, Filter View · Set Rate for Calc./Converter · Own Dictionary · Tasks Filter View · Answer Phone Settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Stored data for Calendar · Alarms · Tasks · Notepad · Answer Phone Recording Data, Guidance

Main menu	Settings initialized by <i>All Reset</i>	
	Settings initialized by <i>Settings Reset</i>	Settings initialized by <i>Memory Reset</i>
Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Groups · Phone Book Priority Search method · PrivacyDisplay · Speed Dialling · Auto Delete · Dupli.Records 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Phone Book data · Groups*7 · Dialed Calls · Received Calls · Missed Calls
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Sound / Mode> · Mode · Volume · Ringtone · Illumination · Vib.Pattern · Other Settings <言語選択> · 表示言語 <Date & Time> · SetDate&Time · Set Dual Time · Format <Internal Disp.> · Greeting · Wallpaper · Menu Setting · Power Saving · Backlight Set. · Operator Set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <Sound / Mode>*7 · Ringtone <Internal Disp.>*7 · Greeting · Wallpaper

Main menu	Settings initialized by <i>All Reset</i>	
	Settings initialized by <i>Settings Reset</i>	Settings initialized by <i>Memory Reset</i>
Settings	<ExternalDisplay> · Ext.Disp.Set · Standby · Indication Info. · Clock Style <Large Font Set> <Common Set.> · Recvr. Volume · Headset · CallTimeDisp. · Toll Display · CLI Display · Dial Pause Set. · Send Tones <Voice Call> · Auto Redial · AnyKeyAnswer · Close Setting <Video Call> · Camera Set. · VideoCallOpt.	<Video Call>*7 · Still Image

Main menu	Settings initialized by <i>All Reset</i>	
	Settings initialized by <i>Settings Reset</i>	Settings initialized by <i>Memory Reset</i>
Settings	<All Calls> · Caller ID · Auto Check under Vmail/Diverts · Unknown · Ignore If NoID <Security> · Key Locks · Handset Code <Connectivity> · Bluetooth Device Name · Bluetooth Timeout Settings · 3G/GSM Setting under Network Setup · Select Network under Network Setup · LBS Lock <Memory Set.> · USB Mode	<Connectivity> · Registered Bluetooth device
Other features	Desktop icon, My menu, Menu icon, Text entry mode	

*1 Initialized by S! Appli **Reset Settings**.

*2 Initialized by S! Appli **Memory Reset**.

*3 Initialized by Yahoo! Keitai **Reset Settings**.


*4 Initialized by Yahoo! Keitai **Memory Reset**.

*5 Initialized by Messaging **Settings Reset**.

*6 SMS data stored on the USIM Card are not initialized by **Memory Reset** or **All Reset**. Use **Delete Message/Delete All** for messages.

*7 Initialized by **Memory Reset** if a data that is not preinstalled at the time of purchase is set as an alternative image.

Tip

- **Data initialized only by All Reset**
 - **RetrieveNWInfo**.
 - Icon displayed when Voice Mail is stored in the Voice Mail Service Center. 
- **Memory Reset or All Reset deletes content keys, which invalidates the right to use copyrighted data.**

Multitasking Combination

The following table shows the main combinations of tasks that can be used simultaneously:

○: Available ×: Unavailable △: Cannot be used simultaneously

Running task Task to run	Music Player	Yahoo! Keitai	S! Cast	Messaging	S! Appli	Entertainment	Camera	Data Folder	Organiser & Tools	Phone Book	Settings	Packet Communication *1	Voice Calls	Video Calls
Music Player	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○ *4	○	○ *7	×
Yahoo! Keitai/ S! Cast/Messaging (SMS/S! Mail)	○ *2	△	△	△	○	○	○	○	○	○	○ *4	△	○	×
S! Appli/ Entertainment/ Camera/Data Folder/ Organiser & Tools/ Phone Book/Settings	○ *3,4	○ *4	○ *4	○ *4	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	○ *8	×
Voice calls in progress	○ *5	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Video calls in progress	○ *5	○ *6	○ *6	○ *6	○ *6	○	○	○	○	○	○ *6	×	×	×
Packet transmission *1	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○	×

*1 When the handset is connected to a PC and used as a modem.

*2 The new message ringtone does not sound while Music Player is running.

*3 Activating Camera or S! Appli stops playback. To launch a file that emits a sound from Entertainment or Data Folder, exit Music Player.

*4 **RetrieveNWInfo** cannot be run simultaneously.

*5 Playback stops when a call is made or received.

*6 A call cannot be made or received while connecting.

*7 Music cannot be played while talking.

*8 Videos cannot be played. S! Appli and Camera cannot be run.

- Some tasks may be unusable while another task is running.


Software Update

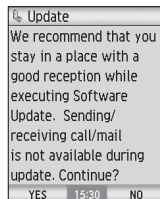
Check if the software of your handset needs to be updated and update the software when needed, through the network. The software can be updated immediately by **Update** or be updated on a reserved time and date by **Schedule Update**.

Note

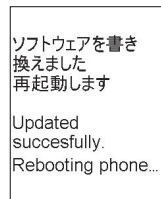
- Before updating the software, be sure to turn off the handset to finish all the activated functions, and turn on the handset again to execute the software update.
- Keep a backup of the data before updating the software (Some of the downloaded data may not be backed up). Data stored before updating the software remain, however, they might be lost according to the condition (such as malfunction) of your handset. SoftBank shall not be liable for any loss of data.
- Check also the website of SoftBank at <http://www.softbank.jp/>, for Software Update.

Software Update

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Update* → *Update*
- 2 Follow the on-screen instructions



Confirm Window

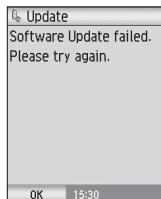


Completion Window

Note

- Update may take up to 30 minutes. Handset operations are unavailable until update is completed.
- Before updating the software, check that there is sufficient battery power.
- Perform the software update where there is good reception, without moving to another place.
- Do not remove the battery pack or the USIM Card, or do not turn the power off during the software update. Software update may be failed.
- Other functions cannot be operated during the software update.
- When the handset is connected to the PC with the USB cable, remove the USB cable before updating the software. The software update may not be executed properly, with the USB cable connected.
- No charges are required for checking/performing the software update.

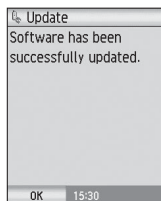
- If software update fails, handset may be unusable. Contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).



Failure Notification Window


■ Check the Result of the Software Update

- 1 Press  and select  (Settings) → *Update* → *Update Result*

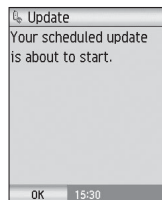


Result Window

■ When using Schedule Update

The confirmation window for the software update appears on the reserved time. Press  or leave the window for approximately 10 seconds, to execute the software update automatically.

- The software update cannot be executed while operating another function. The confirmation window for the software update appears after ending all the activated functions. The reservation of the software update is released when you use another function for more than approximately 10 minutes.
- If the software update is executed while in All Keys Lock, the lock is released.



Confirm Window (Schedule Update)

Troubleshooting

Problem	Point to check or solutions	Page
Cannot turn on the handset	Is the battery fully charged? Replace or charge the battery.	p.1-13
Cannot operate after the handset is turned on	Activate PIN1 may be enabled. Follow the on-screen instruction to enter PIN1.	p.12-2
Please insert the USIM Card. or Unable to recognize this USIM Card. Please use a different USIM Card. appears after handset is powered on or when using handset functions.	Is the USIM Card properly attached? If a message still appears with the card properly attached, it may be broken. Are you using an unsupported USIM Card? Check that it is a dedicated USIM Card.	p.1-5 p.1-4
Presently reading from USIM Card. Please wait a moment and try again. appears	Reading data stored on the USIM Card. Wait until handset reads data.	—
Key operation does not work	Is Dial Locks or Key Locks set to On ? Set Dial Locks or Key Locks to Off .	p.12-4, p.12-8
After dialing, a busy tone sounds	Does OUT appear? Move to a location where there is good reception before dialing. Did you dial the entire phone number starting with 0 (zero)?	p.1-11 p.2-2
OUT appears and a call cannot be made	You are out of service area. Move to a place where the reception is clear.	p.xxvi
A call is interrupted or disconnected	Does OUT appear or is the reception poor? Has the battery run out?	p.xxvi p.1-13
Cannot make a call	Is Dial Locks set to On ? Is Fixed(FDN) set to On ? Is dialing restricted?	p.12-4 p.12-5 p.15-9
Incoming call/mail indicator does not appear on External Display.	Is the entry stored as secret entry?	p.12-7
External Display does not display an indicator for incoming call or mail message	Is External Display's Standby setting set to On ?	p.7-3
A beep sounds during a call	This may indicate the reception is becoming weak and you are switching base stations.	p.xxvi

Problem	Point to check or solutions	Page
Cannot charge the battery	<p>Is the AC charger connector or Charger Adapter properly attached to the handset?</p> <p>Is the AC charger properly plugged into the electrical socket?</p> <p>Is the battery pack attached to the handset?</p> <p>Check the charging terminals of the handset, battery pack, the AC charger connector, the handset external connector. If dirty, clean with a dry cotton swab.</p> <p>Do you charge the battery in an extremely low or high temperature?</p> <p>Is something wrong with the battery pack?</p> <p>If the battery is repeatedly charged but not fully charged, it is time to replace the battery pack. Replace it with a new one.</p> <p>Does the handset or battery pack become hot during charging? If it becomes hot, the charging may be interrupted. Wait and recharge after battery pack has cooled.</p>	<p>p.1-18</p> <p>p.1-18</p> <p>p.1-16</p> <p>p.1-16</p> <p>p.1-13</p> <p>p.1-13</p> <p>p.1-13</p> <p>p.1-13</p>
Charging time is short	If the battery has not run out, the charging time is short.	p.1-13
Battery alarm does not sound before handset powers down.	Is manner mode set? The alarm does not sound in manner mode.	p.1-15
Devices become hot	<p>The AC charger or desktop holder may become hot during charging.</p> <p>The handset may become hot during charging or if you talk for a long time. This is normal as long as you can touch it. If it becomes too hot and you cannot touch it, immediately stop charging/using and contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43).</p>	<p>p.1-13</p> <p>p.1-13</p>
The battery runs out fast	The battery consumption depends on the usage environment (temperature/charging/reception), operations or settings. Making a video call or using S! Appli rapidly consumes battery power.	p.1-16
Display flickers	Do you use the handset near a fluorescent lamp?	p.6-5
The video shooting window flickers	Change the mode in Image Tuning under Camera Settings .	p.6-7
Display is dim when backlight setting is off.	This is normal and not a malfunction.	p.7-4
Some characters do not appear when a vfile is used for Phone Book, Calendar, etc.	A blank appears for a character incompatible with Shift-JIS code. This is not a malfunction.	p.3-3

Problem	Point to check or solutions	Page
<i>The connection was lost.</i> appears	This message appears when the reception is poor and the connection cannot be established. Check the signal strength and retry. This message appears when there is no response from the Service Center. Retry later.	p.xxvi —
<i>Unable to send the message.</i> appears	The Service Center is under maintenance. Retry later.	—
<i>There is no response from the site.</i> appears	This message appears when it cannot be verified that the Service Center accepted the message. Retry later.	—
<i>接続が中断されました 再接続しますか?</i> appears	The connection was disconnected e.g. because the reception became poor while sending the message. Select YES to retry.	—
The message is not delivered to the recipient.	Check whether the recipient sets security by address filter. A message cannot be sent if 184 or 186 is added to the recipient address. Remove 184 or 186 and retry.	— —
The date and time for SMS appears as "??/? ??:??"	If you have moved an SMS in Outbox, the date and time appears as "??/? ??:??".	—
Cannot send S! Mail with picture attachment	Does the recipient's handset support the format of the attached file? If not, you cannot send a picture. Has the recipient subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail? A separate subscription to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail is required to receive a message with a picture attached. A non-subscriber to these services cannot receive a message whose size exceeds 384 bytes (or whose character count exceeds the limit).	p.16-7 p.16-7
There is insufficient free space to store received messages	A message appears indicating that there is insufficient memory and you cannot receive a message. Delete unnecessary received messages. The Service Center keeps messages that could not be received. (When sufficient space is allocated to store messages, the messages kept at the Service Center are automatically received.) Even if the total of used memory is lower than 100%, you may be unable to receive a new message. Delete unnecessary received messages.	p.10-8, p.16-18
<i>Unable to download the file. The file size exceeds the limit.</i> appears	The memory is full for S! Appli Library . Delete unnecessary S! Appli and retry.	p.18-5

Problem	Point to check or solutions	Page
<i>Download operation has been cancelled.</i> <i>The number of maximum to save had reached.</i> appears	100 S! Appli programs are stored on the handset. Delete unnecessary S! Appli and retry.	p.18-2, p.18-5
<i>Download operation has been cancelled.</i> <i>Invalid data was received.</i> appears	The data cannot be downloaded to the 705N handset. Cancel the download.	p.18-2

Kuten Codes

The 3-digit numbers in each left column indicate the first three digits of kuten codes. The numbers at each top row indicate the fourth digit of kuten codes.

Example: Entering 企

Enter the first three digits **012** then the fourth digit **4**.

Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the kuten code list.

区点 1~3桁目	区点4桁目									区点 1~3桁目	区点4桁目									区点 1~3桁目	区点4桁目									区点 1~3桁目	区点4桁目																																																																
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																														
010	[symbols]									037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o	064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ	139	∴	∩	∪								160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修											
011	[symbols]									038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修																						
012	[symbols]									039																																160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修												
013	[symbols]									040																																160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修												
014	[symbols]									041																																	160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修											
015	[symbols]									042																																		160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修										
016	[symbols]									043																																		160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修										
017	[symbols]									044																																		160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修										
018	[symbols]									045																																		160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修										
019	[symbols]									046																																			160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修									
020	[symbols]									047																																			160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修									
021	[symbols]									048																																			160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修									
022	[symbols]									050																																			160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修									
023	[symbols]									051																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
024	[symbols]									052																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
026	[symbols]									053																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
027	[symbols]									054																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
028	[symbols]									055																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
029	[symbols]									056																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
031	[symbols]									057																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
032	[symbols]									058																																				160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修								
033	[symbols]									060	A	B	C	D	E	F	G																											160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修										
034	[symbols]									061	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q																											160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修										
035	[symbols]									062																																			160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修									
036	[symbols]									063																																			160	あ									161	愛									162	始									163	達									164	修									

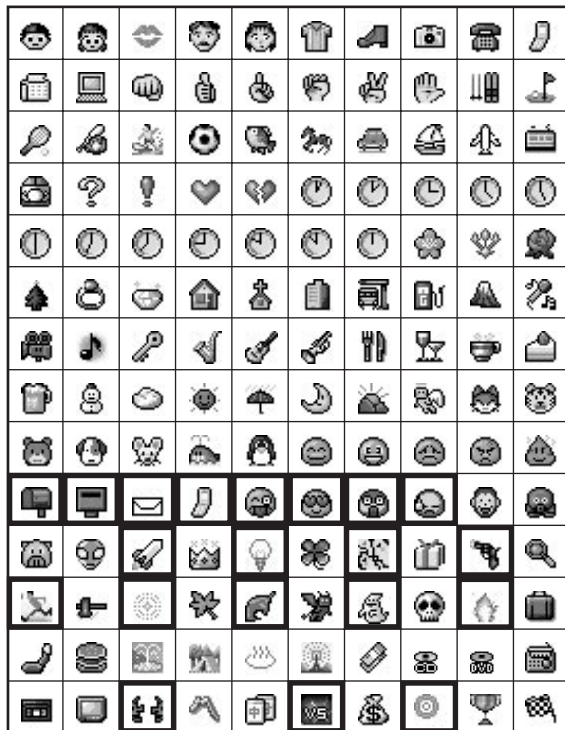
Symbols/Pictographs

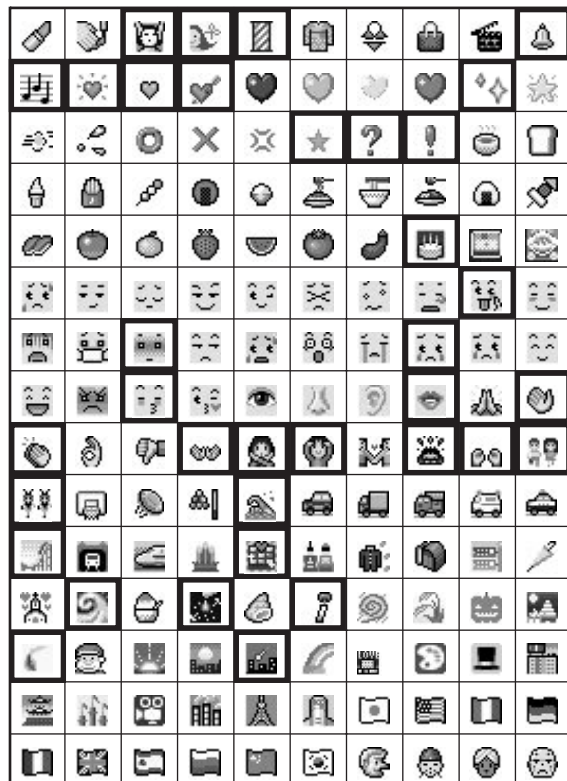
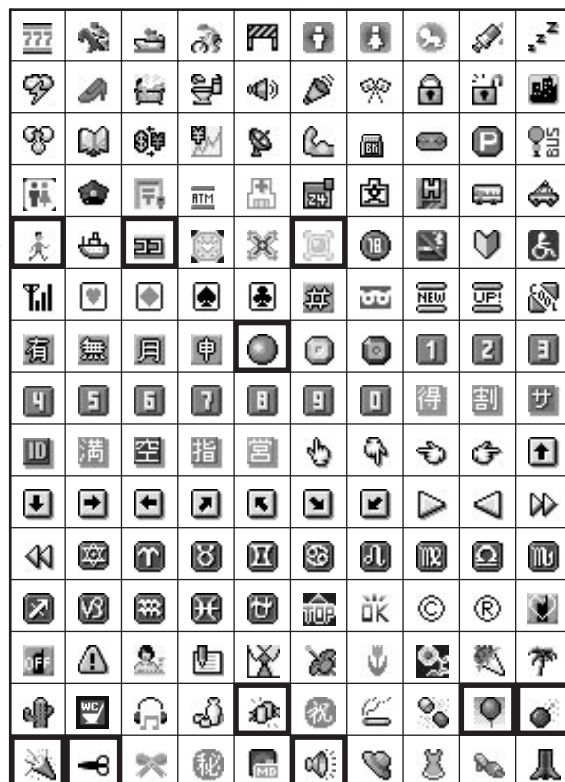
Symbols

























Converted Symbols


Enter	Symbol	Enter	Symbol
あっと	@	さんかく	△▲▼▽
あっとまーく		しゃせん	∧
いこーる	=	しかく	□■◆◇
えん	¥	たす	+
おす	♂	どう	ゝゞゞゞ//々
おなじ	々	ばーせんと	%
おなじく	//	ひく	-
おんぷ	♪	ひしがた	◇◆
かける	×	ほし	☆★
かっこ	() [] {} ◇ ◇ 「」 [] {} . ' . " " 0 ◇ [] {} 「」	まる	○●◎
		おげん	∞
		めす	♀
から	~	やじるし	↔↕↔
こめ	*	ゆうびん	〒
ころん	:	るーと	√
こんま	,	わる	÷

Pictographs





									
									
									
TM									

- Pictographs enclosed by  are animated.
- Some pictographs may not appear on some SoftBank handset models.
- 3D Pictogram or Large Font may look different from the actual ones.

Emoticons

Enter	Emoticon	Enter	Emoticon	Enter	Emoticon
ありがとう	m(_)_m	さよなら	(^-^)/	なぜ	(?_?)
ばんざい	\(^0^)/	さよなら	(^-^)/ ^{www}	がーん	(^-^);!!
わーい	(^0^)	さよなら	(T_T)/	がーん	(^-^);
わーい	(^▽^)	がんば	p(^_^)q	がーん	Σ(=^-^);
わーい	(*^□^*)	ね	(^-^)_b	えへん	(^-^)
わーい	o(^▽^o)(o^▽^o)	ほりほり	(^-^)	む	(-_-)x
わーい	(≧▽≦)	ひやあせ	(^-^);	む	o(=^-^= o)
おーい	(^0^)/	あせあせ	G^-^A	いかり	(^-^)
ぶい	(^^)v	びくっ	(*_*)	むか	G_-+
ぎゃはは	(^Q^)/^	どき	(@-@);	むか	(^-^)
あは	(o^o^o)	え	(@_@);	むか	(^-^*);
あは	^o^;	めがてん	(.·.);	こそこそ	(.·)
にこ	(^-^)	はてな	(.·?)	じーっ	(-_-)
にこ	(*^-^*)	きらーん	(☆。☆)	きこえない	(-_-)
にこ	(o^▽^o)	しくしく	(T_T)	こまったもんだ	(^-~^-)Σ
にこ	(o^▽^o)	いたた	O_<	ぶたー	Y^o(
にこ	(^▽^●)	いたた	(><)	こあら	(-Q-)
にこ	(●^-^●)	えーん	(;);	いっぶく	(^T)y^o
にこ	(o^▽^o)	えーん	(^-^)	いっぶく	(^-)y- ^{www}
ちゅ	(^3^)/	えーん	Ω Å Ω;	ほし	☆シ
ちゅ	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!	えーん	(/D<。)°。	ねてる	(-_-)zz
わくわく	o(^-^o)	えーん	°(p)Λ<q)°°	ねむい	\(^0^)/
ういんく	(^-)	えーん	(T ω \)	ねむい	(ρ_-)/
めも	φ(。)	うーん	(^-~^-);	いじわる	ψ(^▽^#)

Enter	Emoticon	Enter	Emoticon	Enter	Emoticon
うん	(^_^)(。_。)	てるる	(/__;))	よろしく	☆^(\▽^*)
かんばい	(^)/▽☆▽\(^)	てるる	(* / ω \ *)	こまった	><
ども	\(^_^X^_^)/	てるる	(//▽//)	やだ	(O>_<)
がまん	(;^∩^)	てるる	(≧ω≦)	へこむ	(^_~)
こんにちは	∇(=^▽^=)/	しあわせ	°+(* ^ ∇ ^)°+	へこむ	(^ω^)
こんにちは	(・▽・)/	しあわせ	^(\▽^)/	びっくり	(oДO;)
こんにちは	(●^▽^●)/	しあわせ	(*^▽^*)	びっくり	w(^°θ°)w
いいな	(o>ω<o)	なかよし	^~^)^(^~^	だっしゅ	ε=ϣ(・_・)┘
いいな	(@°▽°@)	ごめん	(*C*)		
いいな	(m'□'m)	いじいじ	φ(. ;)		

Memory Capacity

Messaging*1	
Inbox, Mail Folders	Up to 1,000*2
Sent Messages	Up to 500
Outbox, Drafts	Up to 50

*1 **Inbox**, **MyFolder**, **Sent Messages**, **Outbox** and **Drafts** in the Mail Box use memory together.

*2 In **Inbox** and **MyFolder**, more than 1000 messages may be stored.

Yahoo! Keitai	
Saved Pages	Up to 100 (Up to 300K bytes per page)
Bookmarks	Up to 100

Data Folder (Up to 32M bytes)	
Pictures	Up to 595
Ringtones	Up to 595
S! Appli	Up to 100
Music	Up to 250
Videos	Up to 595
Other Folders	Up to 100
Voice Recorder	Up to 100
More Folder	Up to 100

* The number that can be stored varies depending on the data size.

* Up to 5 subfolders and 95 files can be stored in **Pictures**, **Ringtones** and **Videos**, respectively. Each subfolder can contain up to 100 files, which means that up to 595 files can be stored in each root folder. **Music** can contain up to 100 subfolders, each of which can contain up to 100 files. Up to 250 files can be stored in **Music**.

Specifications

The specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

705N

Item	Specification
Weight	Approximately 115 g
Continuous Talk Time	Voice call: Approximately 160 minutes (3G) Approximately 240 minutes (GSM) Video call: Approximately 120 minutes
Continuous Standby Time	Approximately 300 hours (3G) Approximately 210 hours (GSM)
Charging Time	AC Charger: Approximately 170 minutes In-Car charger: Approximately 170 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 50 x 108 x 16 mm (when closed, excluding protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- The above values are calculated with the battery installed.
- Battery operating time is calculated with stable signal conditions. Talking in a weak signal area or leaving the handset in standby mode while out of range consumes much battery power and may reduce battery operating time by more than half.

- Frequent use with the display light on (for Yahoo! keitai operation, etc.) may cause shorter continuous talk time and continuous standby time.
- Setting an animation as wallpaper may cause shorter continuous talk time and continuous standby time.
- Running S! Appli may cause shorter continuous talk time and continuous standby time.
- Continuous talk time is measured under the following conditions: In standby mode and with steady signal reception.
Continuous standby time is measured under the following conditions: In standby mode, with a fully-charged new battery installed, the handset folded, no calls/operations in progress and steady signal reception. As the handset could be used for both talk and standby modes, the actual talk time and standby time may be shorter than indicated above.
- A LCD may contain stuck pixels (missing pixels) or may have pixels that is always lit.

■ Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.8 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	900 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 40 x 50 x 4 mm (excluding protruding parts)

■ AC Charger

Item	Specification
Input Voltage	100 - 240 V AC, 50/60 Hz (When charging outside Japan, use only the proper power cord suitable for a standard in the country)
Rated Input Capacity	9 VA (AC 100)
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.4 V / 600 mA
Operating Temperature	5 °C to 40 °C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 63 x 38 x 20 mm (excluding power cord)

INDEX

A

- AC Charger i, 1-18, 19-33
- Accessing Options Quickly 1-26
- Adjusting the Volume
(Operation During a Call) 2-8
- After Sales Service 19-42
- Alarms 13-5
 - Alarm Notification 13-6
 - Changing/Canceling Alarm Settings 13-6
 - Deleting Alarms 13-7
 - Setting Alarms 13-5
 - Snooze 13-6
- All Reset 12-9, 19-8
- Alphanumeric 3-3, 3-5, 3-9
- Alternative Image 5-3, 5-5
- Answer Phone 2-7, 13-12
- Answering Call 2-6
 - Answering a Video Call 5-3
 - Rejecting an Incoming Call 2-8, 5-3, 12-6
 - Using a Stereo Microphone 14-3
- Any Key Answer 2-6
- Authentication 17-5
- Auto Answer 14-4
- Auto Receive 16-26
- Auto Timer 6-5

B

- Backlight Setting 7-4, 18-7
- Bar Code Reader 6-8
- Battery i, 1-13, 19-33
 - Battery Life 1-16
 - Inserting/Removing the Battery 1-16
- Battery Level 1-15
- Bluetooth 11-2
 - Option 11-6
 - Pairing 11-3
 - Receive Data 11-4
 - Send Data 11-4
- Bookmarks 17-9
- Breaking a Line 3-2, 3-11
- Browser Settings 17-13

C

- Cache 17-2
- Call Barring 15-2, 15-9
- Call Costs 2-10
- Call Forwarding 15-2, 15-3
- Call Forwarding (Diverts) 5-3, 15-3
- Call Logs 2-3
 - Option 2-5
- Call Memo 2-9

- Call Priority 18-6
- Call Time 2-10
- Call Waiting 15-2, 15-6
- Caller ID Information 15-2, 15-11
- Caller ID Notification 15-2
- Camera 6-2
 - Auto Timer 6-5
 - Capturing Images 6-4
 - Capturing Videos 6-6
 - Playing Videos 6-8
 - Viewing Images 6-6
- Canceling Alarm Settings 13-6
 - Deleting 13-7
- Canceling Manner Mode 2-16
- Canceling PIN Lock 1-7, 12-3
- Center Access Code 1-29
- Center Key 1-8
- Change the Number for SMS Message Center
..... 16-29
- Changing Font Size 7-8
 - Message 16-26
 - On a Web Page 17-11
- Changing Main Menu Icon 7-7
- Changing Menu Image 7-7
- Changing PIN Code 12-2

Changing Voice Mail Service Center Number	15-5
Charger	1-13
Charging the Battery	1-18
Charging with the In-Car Charger	1-19
Check URL	17-12
Clear Cache	17-2, 17-17
Clear Playlist	9-7
Clearing the Access History	17-16
Clearing the Cache	17-17
CLI Display	4-4
Close Setting	14-2
Converter	13-9
Copyrighted (DRM) Files	9-3, 9-8
Creating a Message	16-4
Cursor	1-26, 3-2
Moving the Cursor to the Beginning/End of the Text	3-20
Customer Service	19-43
Customizing Handset Address	16-2
D	
Data Communication	11-7
Data Folder	10-2
Available File Format	10-2
Managing Files	10-7
Managing Folders	10-6
Memory Card	10-3, 10-12

Saving Automatically	10-3
Delete	
Address	16-6
Alarm	13-6
Answer Phone	13-14
Appointments, Holidays & Events	13-5
Bookmarks	17-10
Call Logs	2-5
Call Memo	13-16
Characters	3-19
Desktop Icons	7-7
Entries	4-10
Files	10-8
Folders	10-7
History	17-11
International Access Code	14-5
Message	16-18
Notes	13-12
Saved Pages	17-9
Sorting Conditions	16-16
Standby Voice Memo	13-16
S! Appli	18-5
S! Mail on the Server	16-24
Tasks	13-9
Delivery Report	16-27
Desktop Indicators	2-6, 7-5
Device Passkey	11-3
Dial Pause	14-2

Display	
Changing the Display Language to English	1-23
Display Indicators	1-11
External Display	7-3
External Display Indicators	1-12
Setting a Calendar or Image	7-2
Display/Hide the Secret Data	4-3, 12-8
Download	9-4, 10-2
Data with Content Key	17-7
Music	9-7
S! Appli	18-2
Draft	16-7, 16-10, 16-11

E

Editing Characters	3-18
Copying/Cutting Text	3-19
Deleting Characters	3-19
Inserting a Characters	3-18
Pasting Text	3-20
Specify a Character to Delete (BSP/DEL)	3-19
Editing/Deleting Words (Personal Dictionary)	3-12
Emoticons	3-11, 19-30
Entering Characters	3-2
Alphanumeric	3-9
Breaking a Line	3-11
Changing Entry Modes	3-3
Emoticons	3-11

Kanji/Hiragana	3-6
Katakana	3-9
Mode1 (Kana)	3-6
Number	3-10
Personal Dictionary	3-11
Pictographs	3-10
Quoting Phone Book Data	3-12
Switching between Single-byte and Double-byte	3-4
Switching between Upper and Lower Cases	3-4
Symbols	3-10
T9	3-13
Using Kuten Codes	3-11
2-touch	3-17
Entering Subject	16-6
Entry Modes (Numbers)	3-3
External Camera	1-8, 5-4, 6-5
External Display	1-12, 7-3

F

Face Mark	3-11
Features	19-2
File Attachment	16-7
Creation Mode	16-27
S! Mail-Standard Files	16-27
Fix Mode	3-15
Font Type	7-8
Forwarding Message	16-17

Forwarding Message on the Server	16-25
---	-------

G

Group Setting Window	4-6
Group Talk	15-2, 15-7

H

Handset Codes	1-29
Center Access Code	1-29
Network Password	1-29, 15-10
Security Code	1-29, 12-2
Handsfree	2-9, 5-2, 5-3
History	17-11
Hold Answer	2-7

I

Icon/Indicator	
Bluetooth Indicator	11-6
Changing Main Menu Icon	7-7
Desktop Indicators	2-6
Display Indicators	1-11
External Display Indicators	1-12
Indicators for message	16-11
Read/Unread Status Indicator	9-15
S! Appli Library Indicator	18-3
Using a Camera	6-3
Video Call Window Indicator	5-2
Weather Icon	9-17

Ignore If No ID	2-8, 12-6
Illumination	7-8
Image Display/Sound Playback Settings	17-13
Inbox	16-11
In-Car Charger	1-19
Internal Camera	1-8, 5-4, 6-5, 6-6

K

Kanji/Hiragana	3-3
Katakana	3-3
Key Tones	2-16, 8-5
Keys & Menus	1-24
Accessing a Function or Data from a Desktop Icon	7-6
My Menu	1-26
Navigating through Main Menu	1-24
Options	1-27
Softkeys	1-24
Kuten Codes	3-11, 19-21

L

Lamp	1-8
Large Font	7-8

M

Mail Box	16-11
Automatic Sorting (Mail Distribute)	16-15

Changing Folder Names	16-14		
Checking Messages	16-11		
Edit Quote Indicator	16-17		
Folder	16-11		
Forwarding Message	16-17		
Message Deletion	16-18		
Message List Window	16-11		
Message Protection	16-18		
Move Messages	16-15		
Option	16-21		
Reply Message	16-16		
Sort Message	16-15, 16-21		
Mail Server	16-23		
Check Mail Server	16-23		
Receiving S! Mail from Message List	16-24		
Main Image	5-2, 5-4		
Main Menu	1-24		
Making a Call	2-2		
Call Logs	2-3, 2-4		
Making a Video Call	5-2		
Making an International Call	2-2, 2-13		
Option	2-3		
Show/Hide Caller ID	2-2, 15-10		
Speed Dialing	2-5		
Using a Stereo Microphone	14-3		
Using an Entry	4-6		
Making an Emergency Call	2-17		
Making an International Call	2-2		
		Management	
		Folder Management (Messaging)	16-14
		Manage Phone Book	4-9
		Managing Files	10-7
		Managing Folders	10-6
		Managing S! Appli	18-5
		Manner Mode	2-16, 8-2
		Manufacture Number Notification	17-15
		Media Player	9-7
		Checking Data on the microSD Memory Card	10-11
		Option	9-9, 9-12
		Picture Playback	9-8
		Video Player	9-11
		Memory Capacity	19-32
		Memory Card	10-8
		Formatting (Initializing)	10-11
		Transferring Data	10-12
		Memory Reset	12-9, 19-8
		Message List	16-23, 16-24
		Message List Retrieval	16-23
		Message List Window	16-11
		Option	16-21
		Message Type	16-4
		Message Window	16-12
		Internet Access	16-19
		Make a Voice Call	16-19
		Option	16-13
		Phone Book Entry	16-19
		Send a Message	16-19
		Messaging	16-2
		Checking a New Message	2-6, 16-3
		Customizing Handset Address	16-2
		Indicators For Message	16-11
		Message Type	16-4
		Retrieving S! Mail	16-3
		microSD Memory Card	10-8
		Before Using	10-8
		Checking Data	10-11
		File That Can Be Stored	10-11
		Formatting (Initializing)	10-11
		Installing/Removing	10-9
		Transfer Data	10-12
		Minding Manner Mode	2-16
		Missed Calls	2-6
		Mode	8-2
		Mode1 (Kana)	3-6, 3-13
		Mode2 (2-touch)	3-13, 3-17
		Multi Selector	1-8, 1-10
		Multitasking	1-28, 19-14
		Music Player	9-2
		Downloading Music	9-7
		Editing a Playlist	9-6
		Music Player Settings	9-5
		Operation During Playback	9-4
		Option	9-5
		Playback	9-4
		My Folder	16-11

N

Network Password	1-29, 15-10
Network-type S! Appli	18-2
New Message	2-6, 16-3
Notation of Menu Procedures	1-26, 1-27
Notepad	13-11
Option	13-11
Using the Notes	13-11

O

Obtain the Content Key	9-8, 17-7
Operations During a Call	2-8
Optional Services	15-2
Call Barring	15-2, 15-9
Call Forwarding	15-3
Call Waiting	15-2, 15-6
Caller ID	15-10
Display Caller ID	15-11
Group Talk	15-7
Setting Services from a Landline	15-3
Using Service Codes	15-2
Voice Mail	15-2, 15-5
Outbox	16-11, 16-17
Option	16-21
Overwrite Mode	3-18
Owner Information Window	2-12

P

Personal Dictionary	3-11
Phone Book	4-2
Creating New Entries	4-3
Displaying Secret Data	4-3, 12-7
Editing Entries	4-10
Option	4-8
Saving a Number from Call Logs	4-5
Saving Secret Entries	4-3, 12-6
Searching Entries	4-7
Setting Groups	4-5
Using Phone Book	4-6
Pictographs	3-10, 19-27
Picture	6-4, 6-6, 9-8, 17-6, 17-13
Attach a Captured Image	6-8
Editing	9-9
Option	6-5, 9-9
PIN	1-6, 12-2
Activate PIN1	12-2
Changing PIN Code	12-2
PIN Lock	12-3
PIN1	1-6, 12-2
PIN2	1-6, 12-2
PUK (Personal Unblocking Key)	12-3
Playing Music/Melody	9-4, 17-7
Playing the Records (Organiser & Tool)	13-15
Playing Videos	9-11

Playlists	9-4, 9-9, 9-12
Prank Calls Preventing Prank Calls	2-8
Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls	12-5
Prediction Function	3-8
Pre-installed Ringtones and Melodies	8-4
Priority	4-6
Push Tones	14-2, 14-5
Putting a Call on Hold	2-9
Putting an Incoming Call on Hold	2-7

Q

Quick Silent	2-7
---------------------------	-----

R

Receive a New Message	16-3
Received Calls	2-4, 2-5
Option	2-5
Receiving Data (Bluetooth)	11-4
Receiving S! Mail from Message List	16-24
Recording Voice (Stand.ByV.Memo)	13-14
Rejecting Calls	2-8, 5-3, 12-6
Releasing Call Up Limit Setting	2-12
Reset All Personal Data	12-9
Browser Settings	17-16
Functions	12-9
Security Level	18-6

Settings (Messaging)	16-30
S! Appli Setting	18-8
Total Call Time/Cost	2-12
Restricting Incoming/Outgoing Calls	12-5
Retrieving Network Information	1-23
Retry Function	16-2
Ringtone	8-3
Ringtone Volume	8-3
Root Certificates	17-15

S

Saved Pages	17-8
Deleting Saved Pages	17-9
Editing Titles	17-9
Saving Pages	17-8
Viewing Saved Pages	17-9
Saving Secret Entries/Events	4-3, 12-6
Scheduling (Calendar)	13-2
Adding Schedules/Events	13-3
Alarm Notification	13-4
Checking	13-4
Deleting	13-5
Displaying Secret Data	12-7
Editing	13-4
Option	13-2
Saving Secret Entries/Events	12-6
Setting Holidays	13-4
Scroll Setting	16-25, 17-12
Search for a Word (Web Pages)	9-16, 17-12

Security	12-2, 18-5
Security Code	1-29, 12-2
Selecting the Clock Style	1-22, 7-3
Send Option	16-10
Sending a Message	16-5
Cc/Bcc	16-6
Creating Slide	16-8
Draft	16-10
Entering Address	16-6
Entering Subject	16-6
Entering Text	16-7
Entry Field	16-5
File Attachment	16-7
Maximum Number of Characters	16-4
Option	16-7
Selecting Message Type	16-5
Sending	16-7
SMS window	16-5
S! Mail window	16-5
Sent Messages	16-11
Server Mail	16-23
Server Mail Capacity	16-23
Service Codes	15-2
Setting a Limit of Call Costs	2-11
Setting Cookies	17-14
Setting Date & Time	1-21
Setting to Be Reset	19-8
Settings Reset	12-9, 19-8
Reset Settings (Messaging)	16-30

Resetting Browser Settings	17-16
Resetting Security Levels	18-6
Resetting S! Appli Settings	18-8
Settings (Messaging)	16-25
Color Settings	16-30
Font Size	16-26
Heading Text	16-25
Reset Settings	16-30
Send option	16-10
3D Pictogram	16-13, 16-30
Shutter Sound	6-5, 6-7
Signature	16-25
Slide	16-8, 16-13
Add Item	16-8
Adding Slides	16-8
Automatic Play	16-26
Option	16-9
Play Time	16-9
Presentation Format	16-8
Slide-style Message	16-13
SMS	16-2
SMS Center	16-29
SMS Report Request	16-29
SMS Window	16-5
Option	16-7
Softkey	1-8, 1-24
Sort	9-5, 9-7, 16-21
SSL/TLS	17-2
Standby Window	1-21, 7-2, 7-5

Using Desktop Icon	7-5
Stereo Microphone	5-3, 14-3
Sub Image	5-2, 5-4
Subfolders	10-2, 10-6
Symbols	3-10, 19-27
S! Appli	18-2
Adjusting the Volume	18-7
Deleting	18-5, 18-8
Downloading	18-2
Ending	18-4
Incoming Call	18-6
Indicators	18-3
Launching	18-3
Making Backlight Settings	18-7
Pausing	18-4
Property	18-4
Resuming	18-4
Setting Security Levels	18-5
S! Appli Blink	18-7
Vibration	18-7
S! Appli Blink	18-7
S! Loop	9-18
S! Mail	16-2
Auto Receive (S! Mail Settings)	16-26
Receiving S! Mail from Message List	16-24
Retrieving S! Mail	16-3
S! Mail Creation Mode	16-27
S! Mail Window	16-5
Option	16-7

T

Tasks	1-28
Text Entry Modes	3-3, 3-5
Thumbnail	9-8, 10-3
Total Call Cost	2-10
Total Call Time	2-10
Transferring Data	11-8
Turning the Handset On/Off	1-21
T9	3-13

U

Unknown	2-8, 12-6
Uploading Files	17-6
USIM Card	1-4
Exchange Data	4-9
Inserting/Removing	1-5
Phone Book Entries	4-2
Searching Entries	4-7
Using Attachments	16-20
Using Calculator	13-9
Using Desktop Icons	7-5
Using Streaming	17-8
Using Tasks	13-7
Alarm Notification	13-8
Checking Tasks	13-8
Creating Tasks	13-7
Deleting Tasks	13-9

Editing Tasks	13-8
Option	13-8
Utilities CD-ROM	i, 11-6

V

Valid Period	16-10, 16-28, 16-29
vfiles	10-5
Acquiring vfiles for Each Feature	10-6
Creating (Saving) vfiles	10-5
Vibrator	8-5
Video Call	5-2
Answering a Video Call	5-3
Handsfree	5-2
Making a Video Call	5-2
Operations During a Video Call	5-3
Turn on/off Voices and Sound	5-4
Video Call Settings	5-4
Videos	6-6, 6-8, 9-11
Option	6-7, 9-12
Sending Videos	6-8
View Report	16-21
Viewing Pictures	9-8
Voice Mail	15-2, 15-5
Voice Mail Service Center	15-5
Volume	
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	2-8
Adjusting Volume (S! Appli)	18-7
Alarm Volume	8-4
Media Player Volume	9-12

Music Player Volume	9-4
Ringtone Volume	8-3

W

Weather Icon	9-16
Web	17-2
Accessing Bookmarks	17-10
Entering URL	17-3
Yahoo! Keitai Menu	17-3
Web Page	17-4
Access the Web	17-6
Authentication	17-5
Character Code	17-11
Check the URL	17-12
Command Button	17-5
Copying Text	17-12
Create Phone Book	17-6
Create S! Mail to Send	17-6
Creation Message	17-13
Font Size	17-11
Make a Video Call	17-6
Make a Voice Call	17-6
Navigating	17-4
Option	17-4, 17-5
Saving Files	17-6
Saving Melodies	17-7
Scroll Setting	17-12
Searching for a Word	17-12
Selection Button	17-5
Server Certificates	17-13

Text Entry Field	17-5
Updating a Page	17-12
Uploading Files	17-6
Using Melodies	17-7

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	17-3
----------------------------	------

Warranty & After Sales Service

■ Warranty

A warranty comes with the purchase of the handset.

- Check the name of the shop and the date of purchase.
- Read contents fully and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty period is described in the warranty.

SoftBank shall not be liable for any loss or damage, to you or third parties, arising from missed calls due to handset malfunctions.

■ Repair

See Troubleshooting before contacting us for repair.

If you still have any problems, contact Customer Service (☎ p.19-43) in your subscription area or your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Please provide a detailed description of the problem.

- During the warranty period, repairs are performed under the terms and conditions of the warranty.
- After the warranty period expires, repairs are performed if possible on request at your expense.

◀ Note ▶

- **SoftBank shall not be liable for any loss or damage, to you or third parties, arising from missed calls due to handset malfunctions.**
- **The handset malfunction or repair may alter or erase the setting or data you saved. Please back up the data such as Phone Book. SoftBank shall not be liable for any loss or alteration of the setting or data you saved (such as Phone Book/images/sounds), arising from handset malfunctions or repair.**
- **Disassembly or modification of this handset may be against the Japanese Radio Law. Note that a modified handset cannot be repaired.**

◀ Tip ▶

- **Contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or Customer Service, for inquiries about the after sales service.**

Customer Service

If you have any questions about a SoftBank handset or services, please call General Information. For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan,
dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(Please take care to dial the correct number.
International charges will apply to this call.)

■ Toll-free numbers from a landline:

Subscription area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113

SoftBank 705N User Guide

December 2006 Version 1

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries and chargers of all manufacturers.

- * Mobile phones, batteries and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.
- * To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone numbers, call logs, messages, etc.) before taking your handset to the shop.

- * For more information, please dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for Customer Service or visit your nearest SoftBank Shop.

Model name: SoftBank 705N
Manufacturer: NEC Corporation